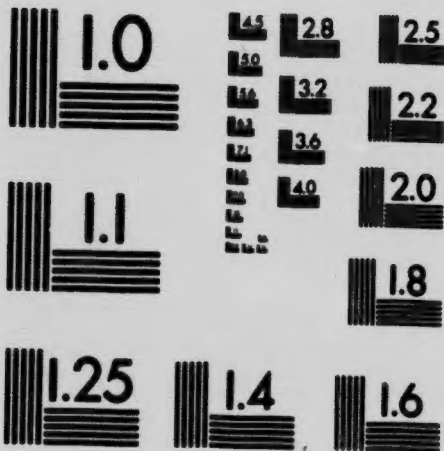




MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART
NATIONAL BUREAU OF STANDARDS
STANDARD REFERENCE MATERIAL 1010a
(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(From the Roman Gallery, British Museum.)

MATRICULATION LATIN

CAESAR

BELLUM GALLICUM IV. 20-38, V. 1-23

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.

VICTORIA COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED
TORONTO

Copyright, Canada, 1917, by W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED
Toronto

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction to Caesar	9
The Story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul	13
Caesar, De Bello Gallico, IV. 20—V. 23.	39
Notes on Caesar, De Bello Gallico, IV. 20—V. 23	67
Index of Points of Syntax and Accidence	94
Vocabulary	101
Test Passages for Translation at Sight	133

ILLUSTRATIONS

Caius Julius Caesar	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Roman Eagle	9
Sub Sarcinis	31
Roman Sword	38
Legionary Soldier	60
Armor and Weapons	60
Roman Soldiers on the March	60
Roman War Galleys	60
Testūdō (from Trajan's Column)	60
Transport Ship	94
Attack on a Walled City	122
Warship	122
MAP OF GAUL AND BRITAIN	5





INTRODUCTION.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

Rise to Eminence.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth, he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in 59 B.C.

First Triumvirate.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles ; Caesar, the leader of the popular party ; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Caesar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him,

after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.* In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

Conquest of Gaul and Expeditions to Britain.

From 58 to 51 B.C. Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. In the first three campaigns he made himself master of that country from the Province and the Pyrenees to the Rhine and the Ocean. In the fourth year (55 B.C.), after driving back across the Rhine certain invading German tribes, Caesar late in the summer undertook a reconnoitring expedition to Britain. He did not venture inland, and returned in a few weeks, but "he had learned where and how to land, and had noted the British method of fighting; above all he had accustomed his men to the sight of the sea and the painted barbarians." Caesar was not satisfied with this expedition, and in the next summer (54 B.C.), in spite of growing disaffection in Gaul, set sail for Britain with a much larger force, as if for a serious invasion. But though he subdued all the south-eastern districts, the Britons fought obstinately, and he had to withdraw at the end of the summer without being able to make any permanent impression upon this distant country, which was not again visited by a Roman army for nearly a century. The remaining three years (53 to 51 B.C.) were spent in completing the subjugation of Gaul, and especially in crushing the insurrections that from time to time broke out. Among the results of Caesar's conquest of Gaul were, first, that the boundaries of the Roman empire were now extended to the English Channel and the Rhine, and secondly, that the Roman language and civilization became so firmly implanted in Gaul that, even after nearly two thousand years, the language of that country (the French) is a modified Latin, and its laws and institutions show everywhere the in-

* For the various senses in which the word *Gaul* is used, see the Vocabulary under *Gallia*.

fluence of Rome. A more immediate result also was to furnish Caesar with an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman world had never before seen.

Civil War and Death.

After the conquest of Gaul, civil war arose between Caesar and Pompey, now his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Caesar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., "the foremost man of all this world" fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

Personal Appearance.

We are told that in personal appearance Caesar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly "Roman," his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

Versatile Genius.

The genius of Caesar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest.

Extant Works.

Caesar was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey. The *Commentaries** of Caesar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the *Commentaries* on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Caesar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

Literary Style.

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Caesar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of the *Commentaries*: "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments." In the choice of words also Caesar is pure and classical, in accordance with the advice quoted from him by the Roman grammarian Gellius, "to shun an uncommon or out-of-the-way word as a ship would a rock."

* *Commentarii*, meaning *sketches, jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

THE STORY OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL.

THE FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

Caesar, hearing of a threatened emigration of the Helvetian nation, hastens from Rome to Transalpine Gaul to prevent a movement so dangerous to the Roman Province.

1. Gallia est omnis¹ divisa in partēs trēs, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam Galli, qui ipsorum² linguā Celtae appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, qui a provinciā longissimē absunt, proximique sunt Germānis, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētii quoque reliquos Gallos virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidianis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt. Sed undique loci naturā continentur: unā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus; alterā³ ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus nostram provinciā⁴ ab Helvētiis dividit. His de causis Helvētii nōn lātē vagari poterant, nec facile finitimis bellum inferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandi cupidi, angustos se finēs habere arbitrābantur. His rebus adducti, oppida sua omnia vicōsque incendere et de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exire constituērunt et optimam partem tōtius Galliae occupāre.

¹ Translate *omnis* by *as a whole*, in opposition to the narrower sense in which Caesar proceeds to speak of the *Galli*.

² Translate by *their own* (in opposition to that of the Romans).

³ Translate here by *a second*.

⁴ Since 118 B.C. the southern part of France had been a Roman province (hence the modern name *Provence*). See the map of Gaul.

2. Itineribus omnino duobus domo¹ exire poterant; quorum unum erat per Sequanos, angustum et difficile; alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius. Caesar, cui provincia Gallia eo anno decreta erat, audivit Helvetios per provinciam nostram iter facere conari. Statim ab urbe proficiscitur et in Galliam pervenit. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat se posse iter² illi per provinciam dare. Relinquebatur una³ per Sequanos via. Mox Caesari renuntiatur Helvetios per agrum Sequanorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a provincia nostra absunt. Intellegebat periculosum provinciae fore⁴, si homines bellicosus, populi Romani inimici, provinciae finitimi essent⁵. Ob eas causas in Italiam contendit; duas ibi legiones conscribit, et tres ex hibernis educit; cum his quinque legionibus in Galliam per Alpes ire contendit.

Caesar surprises the Helvetians at the river Arar, and soon after, near Bibracte, inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder. The survivors are sent back to the homes they had abandoned.

3. Helvetii jam per fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Itaque ne omnes fortunae sociorum consumerentur, Caesar a castris profectus ad Helvetios pervenit⁶. Tres jam partes Helvetiorum flumen Ararim transierant; reliquos aggressus, magnam partem eorum concidit; reliqui sese in proximis silvis abdidērunt. Hoc proelio facto, ut reliquas copias consequi posset⁷, pontem facit, atque ita exercitum traducit. Tum per⁸ multos dies Caesar Helvetios inaequitur, novissimumque agmen lacessit.

¹ See 618. [References are to the High School Latin Book.]

² Translate by *passage or right of passing*.

³ Translate *una via* by *only the way*.

⁴ Fore = *future* case, the future infinitive of *sum*.

⁵ Translate by *should be* (or *were to be*). *SI* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may represent future conditions put in indirect discourse (687. b, and 688).

⁶ Translate by *came up with*.

⁷ For the use of secondary sequence with the historical present see 524. i.

⁸ Translate by *throughout or for*.

4. Tandem ut rei frumentariae prospiceret, iter ab Helvëtiis avertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduorum maximum et copiosissimum ire contendit. Helvëtiî Rômânôs timôre perterritôs esse et discôdere à sê existimâbant. Itaque, itinere converso, nostrôs insequi ac lacescere coepêrunt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiâs suâs in proximum collem subducit, aciemque instruit. Helvëtiî impedimenta in unum locum contulêrunt; ipsi sub primam nostram aciem successêrunt. Caesar, cohortâtus suôs, proelium commisit. Diû atque âcritèr pûgnâvêrunt. Sed cum diûtius sustinêre nostrôrum impetûs nôn possent, Helvëtiî lëgâtôs de deditiône ad Caesarem misêrunt. Caesar Helvëtiôs in finês suôs, unde profecti erant, reverti jussit, et oppida vicôsque restituere. Helvëtiôrum trecenta et sexâgintâ octô milia domo exierant; vix centum et decem milia domum¹ rediêrunt.

The leading men of several Gallic tribes ask Caesar's assistance against Ariovistus, a German king, who had recently gained a footing in central Gaul. Caesar at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain.

5. Hôc bellô cōfectô, s ferê Galliae principês ad Caesarem convênêrunt atque petierunt ut sibi auxilium ferret contrâ Ariovistum, rêgem Germânôrum, qui multa milia suôrum in Galliam trädûxisset optimumque agrum occupâvisset atque Gallôs ex finibus pelleret. Dëmônstrant Ariovistum Gallôrum cōpiâs proeliô vicisse et nunc crudêlitér imperâre atque obsidês² nôbilissimôrum liberôs poscere; neque posse ejus imperium diûtius sustinêri. His rêbus cōgnitis Caesar Gallôrum animôs cōfirmâvit, pollicitusque sê Galliam ab Ariovisti injûriâ dëfensûrum. Hâc orâtione habitâ principês dimisit. Simul Germânôs cōsuescere³ in Galliam trânsire populô Rômânô periculôsum esse vidêbat, nê, cum omnem Galliam oocupâvissent, in prôvinciam extirent atque inde in Italiâ contenderent. Itaque cōstituit ad

¹ See 61A.

² Translate by *as hostages*; for the case see 570.

³ See the second illustrative sentence in 124.

Ariovistum legātōs mittere quī ab eō postulārent ut aliquem locum colloquī¹ diceret.

6. Quod² cum nōllet Ariovistus facere, iterum ad eum Caesar legātōs mittit quī postulārent primum nē amplius Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde ut obsidēs Gallis redderet nēve bellum iis inferret. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit sē Gallōs vicisse atque iure belli uti cōstituisse; sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque Gallis injuriā³ bellum illātūrum si imperiō suo pārērent⁴; atque si Caesar vellet sēcum congredi, intellectūrum quanta esset virtūs invictōrum Germānōrum.

7. Eodem tempore Caesar certior factus est Germānōs, quī nūper in Galliam transportātī essent, finēs Aeduōrum populārī, et magnam multitudinem Suēbōrum, ad ripās Rhēni vēnisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur. Quibus⁵ rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus, mātūrāre cōstituit nē nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē conjungerent. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Cum tridui viam processisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. In eō oppidō omnium rērum quae ad bellum usui erant summa erat facultās, idque nātūrā loci egregiē mūniēbātur. Hūc Caesar contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Deceived by false reports, the Roman soldiers are at first reluctant to advance, but Caesar calms their fears. On drawing near the Germans, Caesar has an interview with Ariovistus which the enemy's treachery renders fruitless.

8. Dum paucōs diēs ibi rei frūmentāriae causā morātur, militēs falsis rūmōribus magnopere perturbātī sunt. Nam Galli ac mercē-

¹ Translate the dative by *for*.

² To emphasize the connection with the preceding words, Latin often uses *quī* for *hic* or *is*, placing it even before a conjunction. Here *quod* (literally *which thing*) is the object of *facere*; translate by *this* (337).

³ Translate by *wrongfully* (596. iii).

⁴ For *pārērent* and *vellet* compare footnote 5, page 14.

⁵ Compare footnote 2 above, and translate as if it were *his*.

törös Germānōs ingenti māgnitūdine¹ esse corporum, incredibilique virtūte praedicābant. Caesar cum animadvertisset milites propter timōrem castra movēre ac signa contrā hostēs ferre nōlle, convocātō concilio, dēmōnstrat Germānōs saepe ab Helvētiis superātōs esse, quī tamen parēs esse exercitui Rōmānō nōn potuissent. Tūc affirmāvit sē proximā nocte quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, atque si praetereā nēmō sequeretur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret. Hāc orātiōne habitā, summa alacritās et cupiditās belligerendi innāta est², atque quārtā vigiliā, ut³ dixerat, profectus est cum omni exercitū. Septimō diē ab explorātōribus certior factus est Ariovisti cōpiās passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

9. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus: iōgātōs ad eum mittit qui dicerent Ariovistum, cum Caesar propius accessisset, colloqui cum eō jam velle: simul postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret, sed ut uterque cum equitātū veniret; verērī⁴ sē nē per insidiās⁵ ab eō circumvenirētur. Plānitias erat māgna inter castra Ariovisti et Caesaris. Eō uterque cum equitātū ad colloquium venit, atque cum paucis equitibus in mediam plānitiam prōgreditur. Reliqui equitēs mediocri intervallo⁶ cōstitērunt.

10. Caesar initiō orātiōnis ostendit quanta a sē senātūque beneficia Ariovistus accēpisset; simul docēbat Aeduōs diū sociōs populi Rōmāni fuisse. Postulāvit deinde eadem quae⁷ lēgātī. Ariovistus respondit sē rogātum esse ā Gallis ut Rhēnum trānsiret; nōn sēss Gallis sed Gēris sibi bellum postea intulisse; atque iniquum esse exercitum. Mānum⁸ in suōs finēs venire. Postulāvit

¹ Translate māgnitūdē corporum by stature.

² Translate was aroused.

³ Ut, in the sense of as, takes the indicative.

⁴ The infinitive is in indirect discourse, the verb of saying being easily understood. For nē=lest or that after verbs of fearing see 629.

⁵ Translate by treacherously.

⁶ The ablative, as well as the accusative, may be used to express distance (598. 1). Translate here by at.

⁷ Translate by made the same demands as.

⁸ See footnote 2, page 15.

igitur ut Caesar dēcēderet et liberam possēssiōnem Galliae sibi trāderet. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius accēdere, et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit, suisque imperāvit, nē quod omninō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent, nē pulsi hostēs dicere possent sē in colloquiō per insidiās circumventōs. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, multō māius studium pūgnandi exercitui injectum est¹.

After several delays, Caesar comes to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

11. Post paucōs diēs Ariovistus, castris mōtis, praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus² ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōsiliō³ ut frūmentō com.neātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Tum diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrāxit. Ariovistus autem, etāi dimicandī potestās nōn deerat, hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit⁴, et equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ultrā eum locum ubi Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iis, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse⁵, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Tum cōpiās Ariovistus misit quae nostrōs mūnitiōne⁶ prohiberent. Caesar tamen, ut antea cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris, duās legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra mājōra redūxit.

¹ Translate *injectō* and the dative by *inspire* (or *arouse*) *in* (577).

² For the ablative expressing distance see footnote 6, page 17.

³ Translate by *with this design*, explained by the following clause.

⁴ Translate by *kept in camp*.

⁵ Translate by *to remain under arms*.

⁶ Translate by *from fortifying*.

12. Proximō diē Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās edūxit, paulumque ā mājōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandi potestātem fecit¹. Ubi nē tum quidem eos prōdīre intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Posterō diē praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, atque triplici instrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēnum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās edūxērunt, omnemque aciem rēdis et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs milites flentēs implōrābant nē se in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

13. Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri ācritē in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fecērunt, itaque² hostēs celeriter prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pila in hostēs conjiciendi nōn darētur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pūgnant. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa cesset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant³. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus, quī equitātui praecerat, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci salutē repperērunt; in⁴ his fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam deligātā ad ripam nactus, eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnēs cōsecūti equitēs nostrī interfecerunt.

14. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbi quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus

¹ Translate by *gave an opportunity*.

² Itaque, here two words, *ita + que*.

³ Translate the imperfect by *kept pressing*.

⁴ Translate by *among*.

anni postulābat, in hiberna in¹ Sequanos exercitum deduxit. Hibernis Labienum legātum praefecit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam profectus est.

THE SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

Learning that the tribes of the Belgae are combining against the Romans, Caesar advances into their territory and encamps on the bank of the river Axona.

15. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur², litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre. Conjūrāndi hae erant causae: primum verēbantur nō omni pācātā Galliā ad Belgās exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre in Galliā cōnsuēscere³ nōlēbant; nōnnūlli etiam ex potentiōribus, qui rēgna occupāre cupiēbant, molestō ferēbant quod minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō⁴ cōsequi possent. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestātē⁵, in interiōrem Galliam quī dedūceret⁶, Quintum Pedium legātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Imperat Gallis quī finitimī Belgis erant uti⁷ ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hi cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgi, exercitum in unum locum condūci. Tum vērō rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārū pervenit.

¹ Translate by *among*; the phrase modifies a verb of motion (512. vii).

² The imperfect denotes repeated action, *kept coming in*; so *fiēbat*, *was repeatedly informed*.

³ Translate by *that an army should become accustomed* (517. b).

⁴ Translate by *under our rule*.

⁵ An ablative absolute; translate by *at the beginning of summer*.

⁶ For the relative clause of purpose see 383.

⁷ Distinguish *ut* = *ut* and *ut* the infinitive of *ut*er.

16. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione¹ venisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliae ex² Belgis sunt, ad eum legātōs miserunt, qui dicerent se neque cum Belgis reliquis cōsensisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāsse³, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperātā⁴ facere; reliquos omnēs Belgās in armis esse, Germānōsque, qui cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum his conjunxisse. Cui ab his quaereret, quae civitatēs in armis essent et quid in bellō possent⁵, sic reperiebat⁶: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānis, Rhēnumque⁷ antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitatem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōsque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse.

17. De numerō eōrum Rēmi dicēbant quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārū conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit⁸ se cōgnōvisse. Plūrimū inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctoritatē et hominum numerō valēre⁹; hōs pollicitōs esse sexāgintā milia armātōrum, tōtiusque belli imperiū¹⁰ sibi postulāre. Successionē suās esse finitimōs; finēs latissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre; oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicērī milia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nervios, qui māximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur¹¹ longissimēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebatēs, Ambianōs decem milia, Morinōs viginti quinque milia, Menapiōs septem milia, Caletōs decem milia, Vellocassēs et Viromanduos totidem, Aduātucōs decem et novem milia.

18. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātione prōsecūtus¹²

¹ Literally *than all expectation*; translate by *than any one had expected*.

² To be taken closely with *proximi* and translated by *of*.

³ A contracted form for *conjūrāvissē*.

⁴ Translate by *his bidding*.

⁵ Translate by *what their strength was*. For *quid* see 571. i.

⁶ Translate by *he obtained this information*.

⁷ *Rhēnum* depends on *trāns* in *trāductōs* (560. i).

⁸ For the tense see 637. b. ii.

⁹ Translate *plūrimū valēre* by *were the strongest*; the infinitive, like those which follow, depends on *cōgnōvisse*.

¹⁰ Translate by *the supreme command*.

¹¹ Translate by *are considered*; *feri* is the predicate nominative.

¹² Translate by *addressing them with kindly words*.

omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Tum postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum collectas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab iis, quos miserat, exploratoribus cognovit, flumen¹ Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit: castra pedum² duodecim vallis fossaeque duodeviginti pedum³ muniri jubet.

After an unsuccessful attack on Bibrax, the Belgae advance against Caesar. They are, however, defeated with great slaughter at the river Axona, and at once disband.

19. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. Id magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est⁴. Sed cum finem oppugnandi non fecisset⁵, Iccius Remus, summam nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis, qui legati⁶ de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse⁷. Eo media nocte Caesar sagittarios et funditores subsidio oppidanis⁷ mittit; quorum adventu, hostes, paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis sedificiisque, quae adire potuerant, incensis ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contendunt.

¹ Notice the double accusative with *traducere* (569. i).

² Referring to the height and width respectively.

³ For the use of the impersonal passive see 556. Translate by *they held out or the defence was maintained* (704. c).

⁴ Translate *finem fecisset* by *put an end (to)*.

⁵ Translate by *as ambassadors*, referring to those mentioned in § 16 above.

⁶ *Nisi . . . posse* is indirect discourse, depending on the idea of *saying* implied in *nuntium mittit*.

⁷ For the double dative see 431.

20. Caesar duâbus legiônibus, quâs proximâ descriperat, in castris relictis, reliquâs sex legiões pro in acie constituit. Hostes item suâs cōpiâs ex castris eductas instruxerunt. Palus erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent¹, hostes expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret², ut impeditos aggredierentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duâs acies contendebatur³. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt⁴, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum cōpiarum trādūcere cōnati sunt eō consilio, ut, si possent⁵, castrum illud, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent pontemque interseinderent; si minus potuissent⁶, agrōs Rēnōrum popularentur, qui magnō nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohiberent.

21. Caesar certior factus ab Tituriō omnem equitatum et levis armaturae⁷ Numidâs, funditores sagittariosque pontem trādūcit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eō locō pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flūmine aggressi magnū eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliqui audacissimē transire cōnantes multitudinē telōrum repulsi sunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flūmine transeundo spera sua fefellisse⁸ intellexerunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria, deficiente exceptis, consilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse, domum suam quēque reverti et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmāni exercitum intrōdūtū essent⁹, ad eos defendendos undique convenire. Illi et constitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumore castris egressi sunt nullo

¹ Translate by *led out and* (550. 11; 542. 1. 1).

² See the second illustrative sentence in 612.

³ Translate *initium facit* by *take the first step (in), or set the example*.

⁴ See 558. Translate by *a cavalry engagement was going on*.

⁵ For the tense see footnote 5, page 14.

⁶ Translate by *light armed*, literally *of light equipment*.

⁷ From *fallis*. *Ipsos*, in contrast with the Romans.

⁸ Translate by *should lead* (687. b); the antecedent of *quorum* is *eos*.

⁹ Translate *nullo . . . imperio* by *without any . . . control*.

certō ordine neque imperiō, sic ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

22. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum¹ equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē² ab explorātōribus omnem equitātum, qui novissimum agmen morārētur, misit. His Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, sub occāsumque sōlis sē in castra, ut erat imperātum³, recēpērunt.

Caesar advances into the Belgian country, receiving the submission of various tribes, and at last comes to the Nervii, the bravest of all the Belgae, who offer resistance.

23. Postridiē ejus diē⁴ Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre, ac fugā reciperent⁵, in finēs Suessiōnum, qui proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab⁶ dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrique altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus⁷ expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnitīs, vineās ad oppidum agere, aggerem jacere, turrēs cōstituere⁸ quaeque ad oppūgnandum tīsui erant comparāre coepit. Tum Galli māgnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante neque audierant, et celeritatē Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armisque omni-

¹ Referring to the infantry alone.

² Translate by *on the fact being established*.

³ Translate by *according to instructions* (556; 704. c).

⁴ Translate by *next day*; literally *on the morrow of that day*.

⁵ See 630. b, with the illustrative sentence.

⁶ Translate by *empty or destitute of*.

⁷ See 305 and 516. b. Translate by *although*.

⁸ Translate by *erect*. Quaeque is two words. Audierant = *audierant, had heard of*.

bus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditionem Suessionēs accēpit¹ exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

24. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs mājorēs nātū² ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in ejus fidem ac potestātem venire³ neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre⁴ pācem ab Rōmānis petierunt. Caesar, quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctoritāte atque hominum multitudīne praestābat, assentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdiderunt.

25. Eōrum finēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: esse hominēs ferēs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent⁵ patriamque virtutem prōjēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdūum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivis Salām flūmen ab castris suis nōn amplius⁶ milia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre finē cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem belli fortūnam experirentur); expectārī etiam ab his Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quique⁷ per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtīlēs vidērentur in eum locum conjēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

¹ Translate by *received the surrender of the Suessiones*.

² Translate by *the older men or the elders* (414). Vōce means *the tones of their voices*, for they could not speak Latin.

³ Translate by *put themselves under his protection*, etc.

⁴ Translate by *according to* (415. b); so cōsuetūdine suā, page 26.

⁵ See 685 and translate by *for surrendering*.

⁶ Translate by *more than* (503. ii).

⁷ Quique has the force of cōque qui. Quō is an adverb = *ad quem*, with antecedent locum; translate by *a place to which*.

The Nervii plan to surprise the Roman army. The design in part fails, but the Romans are for a time in great jeopardy, the utmost confusion prevailing, because of the suddenness and fury of the enemy's onset.

26. His rébus cōgnitis explorātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit qui locum idōneum castris dēligant. Sed quīdam ex dēditiciis Belgis qui ūnā cum Caesare iter faciēbant, ut postea ex captivis cōgnitum est, nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt atque his dēmōstrā-runt¹ inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtīi², cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis³ adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis futurum, ut⁴ reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum⁵ nostrī castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summo⁶ aequālīter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbatur adversus huic, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset⁷. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occulto⁸ sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

27. Caesar equitatū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis⁹; sed ratiō ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac¹⁰ Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē

¹ For dēmōstrāvērunt. Translate singulās (737. i) by *the several or every two*.

² Translate by *and that there was no difficulty* (593. iii).

³ Translate by *while still burdened with the packs*. (See out on page 31.)

⁴ Translate futurum (esse) *ut* by *the result would be that* (592. iv).

⁵ Omit in translation (606. c).

⁶ Translate by *from the top*; but for *ab superiōre parte* see 618. viii.

⁷ Translate by *one could not see* (556).

⁸ Translate by *in hiding*. For *pedum* see 596. viii.

⁹ See 596. iii.

¹⁰ Translate by *was different from what* (602. iii; 599. c, ii).

cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitatū proelium commiserunt. Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae¹ vēnerant, castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab iis, qui in silvis abditī latēbant, visa sunt, subito omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incredibili celeritatē adversō colle² ad nostra castra atque eōs, qui in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

28. Caesarī omnia ānō tempore erant agenda³: vexillum⁴ prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rerum magnā partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. His difficultātibus⁵ duae rēs erant subsidio, scientia atque fūsus militum (nam superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri oportēret, sibi praescribere poterant), et quod ab opere lēgātōs Caesar discedere, nisi⁶ mūnitis castris, vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitatē et celeritatē hostium nihil jam⁷ Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs militēs occurrit et ad legiōnem decimā dēvenit. Militēs cohortātus, utī suae pristinae virtūtis memoriā retinērent hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proelii committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus⁸ occurrit.

¹ See 705. c. In the next sentence translate by *the head of the baggage-train* (566. vi. b).

² Translate by *up the hill*, literally *by way of the hill facing them* (566. ii. a).

³ See 612; understand *erat* or *erant* throughout the sentence.

⁴ The *vexillum* indicated an impending battle; the *tuba* gave the signal to fall in; the final signal was to begin the battle.

⁵ Translate by *these difficulties were relieved by two circumstances* (431); these were, first, *scientia atque fūsus*, and second, *quod . . . vetuerat*. For *quod*, *the fact that*, see 640. vii.

⁶ See 530. iv. fr.; translate freely by *until after*, etc.

⁷ Translate by *no longer*. *Vidēbantur*, as often, means *seemed best*.

⁸ Understand *eis*, *them*; for the dative see 553.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insignia¹ accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta detrūdenda tempus defuerit.

29. Legiōnis² nōnae et decimae militēs, qui in sinistrā parte aciei cōstitierant, pilis ēmissis Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et insecūtī gladiis māgnam partem eōrum interfecērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāverunt et redintegrātō proeliō hostēs in fugam conjecērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae³ duae legiōnēs, undecima et octāva, profligātis Viroman-
duis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiōre, in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nudātis castris, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfer-
tissimō agmine⁴ ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars castra petere coepit.

30. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, qui cum iis tūnā fuerant, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis⁵ hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur⁶. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēveri, qui auxilii causā ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium castra complēri nostra, legiōnēs premi et paene circumventās esse, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis⁷ nostris rēbus domum contēdērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris im-
mentisquo eōrum hostēs potitōs civitatī renūtiāverunt.

¹ Such as crests and distinguishing badges. For the tense of *defuerit* see 509. II.

² To be repeated with *decimae*; translate freely by the plural.

³ Translate by *apart from the rest*; and *ipsa*, by *the very*.

⁴ Translate by *in a very dense column*.

⁵ Translate by *face to face*.

⁶ For the number see 509. c. II.

⁷ Used transitively by Caesar in the ablative absolute; translate by *despairing of our success*.

Caesar by his presence and example at length rallies the legions, and after desperate fighting the Nervii are driven back with enormous loss, and submit to the Romans.

31. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, suōs urgēri et duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs militēs sibi ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occisōs esse signiferumque interfectum, signum āmissum, reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātōs aut occisōs, et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis proeliō excēdere ac tela vitāre, hostēs ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō, neque illū esse subsidium, quod submitti posset. Tum vērō scūtō militi¹ detrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit, mīlitēsque cohortātus signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō² facilius gladiis ut³ possent. Cūjus adventū spēs illātā militibus⁴ ac redintegrātō animō, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

32. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae juxtā cōstiterat, item urgēri ab hoste vīdīasset, monuit, ut paulātim eōs legiōnēs conjungerent et signa in hostēs inferrent. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō⁵ in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus, et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Hōrum adventū tantarū commutātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam qui⁶ vulneribus cōfecti prōcubuissent, scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent.

33. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spēs salutis⁷ tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent⁷, proximī jacentibus

¹ Translate the dative by *from* (578. i).

² See 525. b.

³ Translate the dative by *in*, or more freely as in 577. ii.

⁴ Translate by *quickening their pace*. For *summū* see 175.

⁵ Translate by *even such of our men as*; for *prōcubuissent* see 550. For the ablative *scūtis* see 600.

⁶ Translate by *when hope of safety was all but gone* (175).

⁷ From *cadē*. Translate *iacentibus* by *(upon) the fallen or on their prostrate bodies* (544. a; 577).

Insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent, et ut¹ ex tumultu tela in nostros conjicerent. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad inter-
necionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, majores natu, qui
una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes coniecti
erant, hac pugna nuntiata, omnium qui supererant consensu le-
gatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dederunt. Quos Caesar
suis² finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit, ut ab
injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

*The Aduatuci, retiring to a strongly-fortified place, prepare to resist
Caesar, but on realizing the efficiency of the Romans' siege
artillery, make their submission.*

34. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis
auxilio Nervii venissent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum
revertentur cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in
unum oppidum egregie naturam munitum contulerunt. Quem
locum duplici altissimo muro munierant: tum³ magni ponderis
saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocabant. Ac primo adventu
exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursionem faciebant parvu-
lisque proeliis⁴ cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo passuum in
circuitu quindecim milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti op-
pido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis, aggere extructo, turrim
procul constitui⁵ viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpi-
tare vocibus, quod⁶ tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio⁷ instrueretur.

35. Ubi vero moveri⁸ et appropinquare moenibus viderent, nova
atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace mis-
erunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti sunt; se non existimare Romanos

¹ Translate by *as*; *conjicerent* depends on the first *ut*.

² Translate by *their own*, referring to *quos* (656. 1).

³ Translate by *at this time* or *now*.

⁴ Translate by *skirmishes*.

⁵ See footnote 8, page 24; for the historical infinitives following see 601.

⁶ See 640. Translate by *at the idea of*.

⁷ Translate by *so far off*.

⁸ Understand *turrim* as subject. Translate *specie* by *spectacle*.

sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui¹ tantae altitudinis māchinātiōēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixerunt. His rēbus gestis omni Galliā pacatā tanta hōjus belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est, ut² ab iis nātiōibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent³, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, qui sē obsidēs datūrās⁴, imperāta factūrās pollicerentur.



Sub Martialis.

THE THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

The tribes on the north-western coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty.

36. His rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimāret⁵, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque regiōēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmentī causā dimisit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas⁶, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

¹ Translate by *seeing that they* (665). ² See 673.

³ Feminine referring to the nātiōēs, whom the envoys represented.

⁴ Translate by *had every reason to think*.

⁵ In the names of Gallic tribes, the Greek ending *-as* is often used instead of *-es* in the accusative plural of Declension III. (723. d).

37. Hujus est civitatis¹ longē amplissima auctoritās omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plurimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque usū nauticārum rerum reliquos antecēdunt. Hi retinent Siliū n atque Volānium quod per eos suos sē obsidēs, quos Crassō dēdis- sent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctoritatē finitimī adducti (ut² sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōsilia), eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis lēgātis reliquās civitatēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertatē, quam ā mājoribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum³ servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī orā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam per- ductā commūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat⁴.

Caesar builds a fleet and makes other preparations for quelling the revolt, but because of the difficulties of the situation spends most of the summer without making much headway.

38. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius⁵, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligore, quod influit in Oceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet. His rēbus celeriter admini- strātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit⁶, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitatēs cōgnitō Caesaris ad- ventū prō māgnitudine periculi bellum parāre et mājorē ea, quae ad usum nāvium pertinent⁷, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc mājore spē⁸, quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera

¹ Translate by *this state possesses*, or *to this state belongs* (586. i).

² Translate by *for* (639). Translate *repentina* by *unexpected*.

³ Translate the genitive by *to* (586. ii).

⁴ The idea of *saying* is implied in *lēgatiōnem mittunt*; translate by *telling him to restore* (586. c; 691).

⁵ Translate by *too far* (578. iii). Translate *institui* by *to be organised*.

⁶ Translate by *as soon as the season permitted*.

⁷ Equal to *quae ad usum nāvium*. Translate *parāre* by *prepare for*.

⁸ Translate by *all the more confidently*; for *hōc* (literally by *this*) see 593.

conclava aestuariis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant, neque¹ nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmenti inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac perspiciebant sē plūrimū nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque illam facultātem habērē nāvium neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestārī essent, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse.

39. His initis cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendi quās suprà ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: rebellio facta post deditiōnem, defectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum conjuratio. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studere et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, priusquam plūres civitatēs cōspirārent², lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

40. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitatē mittit. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnariis duodecim et māgnō numerō equitatūs in Aquitāniam proficiēci jubeat, nō ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs jungantur. Decimum Brutum adulescentem classi Gallicisq̄ue nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisq̄ue pācātis regiōnibus convenire jusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetōs³ proficiēci jubeat. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpīs contendit. Erant ejusmodi ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs⁴ lingulis prōmunturiisque propter aestūs neque pedibus aditum habērent⁵, neque nāvibus. Ita oppidōrum oppugnatio impediēbatur; ac si quandō māgnitudine operis⁶ forte superāti, suis

¹ Equal to *et nōn*, the negative going only with *posse*.

² Translate by *before* . . . *should* and compare footnote 5, page 24.

³ Translate by *into the country of the Veneti*.

⁴ Translate by *the points of* (586. vi, 5). With *posita* understand *oppida*.

⁵ Translate by *were accessible*.

⁶ Translate by *of the siege-works*, and *superāti* by *being overmatched*.

fortūa¹ dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō, sui dēportābant omnia, sēque in proxima oppida recipiebant: ibi sē rūsus iisdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō² facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque³ erat vāstō atque apertō mari, māgnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis portibus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

At last a decisive naval battle is fought in which the Romans are completely victorious.

41. Complūribus expūgātis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frūstrā tantum⁴ labōrem sūmī, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae vigintī nāvēs eōrum⁵ parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ornātissimae profectae ex portū nostris adversae cōstitērunt. Ūna erat māgnō ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostris, falcēs praecūtāe insertae affixaeque longuriis. His cum fūnēs, quī antennās ad mālōs dētīnābant, comprehēnsī adductique erant⁶, nāvīgiō rēmis incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antennae concidēbant, ut his ēreptis omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.

42. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in⁷ virtūte, quā nostri milites facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in⁸ mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur. Disiectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulās binae ac ternae⁹ nāvēs circumsteterant, militū summa vī trānsce-

¹ Translate the dative by *of*, literally (*lose hope*) *for*. For the tense of *coeperant* and *dēportābant* see 561. Translate the three imperfects by *would* (678. b).

² See footnote 8, page 32.

³ With *difficultās*. For the intervening ablatives, to be translated by *as*, see 548.

⁴ Translate by *all this*. With *exspectandam* understand *case* (668. b).

⁵ Translate by *of theirs*. For *parātissimae*, *well* or *fully equipped*, see 261. d. Translate *armōrum* by *of appliances*. With *nostris* understand *navibus*.

⁶ See 623. For the translation of the imperfect see footnote 1 above.

⁷ Translate *erat positum in* by *depended on* (681. b).

⁸ Translate by *over*.

⁹ Translate by *two or three* or by *twos and threes*.

dere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac jam conversis in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat¹, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex locō commovere nōn possent. Quae quidem res ad negōtium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna : nam singulās nostri cōsectātī expūgnāverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenerint. Quō proelio bellum Venetōrum² tōtiusque orae maritimae cōfectum est.

THE FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by their neighbors, cross into Gaul. Caesar, fearing an alliance of Germans and disaffected Gauls, advances to the Rhine, surprises and routs the invaders.

43. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, Usipetēs et item Tencteri māgnā cum multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod³ ab Suebis complūrēs annōs exagitātī bello premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis⁴ Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt ; quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant et ad⁵ utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant ; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iīs aedificiis, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverunt et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire⁶ prohibēbant.

44. Illi omnia⁷ experti cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē⁸ in suās sēdēs regiōnēsq̄ue simulāverunt, et tridui

¹ Translate by *was blowing*. For *que* = *in quam* see footnote 7, page 25. Translate *exstitit* by *came* or *ensued*.

² Translate the genitive by *with* or *against* (566. ii).

³ Translate by *that* (640. vii).

⁴ Translate by *through many parts*. For the case see 618. v.

⁵ Translate by *on*.

⁶ See 618. i, and for the force of the imperfect, 678. c.

⁷ Translate by *every device*, and *vī contendere* by *to force a passage*.

⁸ See 614. iv.

viam progressi rursus revertērunt atque omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitatū¹ confectō Inscios inopinantēsq̃ue Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanōrum discessū per exploratōres certiores facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suos vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trāsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

45. Hīs de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbiles et lovis plerumque rebus student, mātūrius, quam cōsuērat², ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum venisset ea quae fore³ auspiciātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōnnūllis civitatibus ad Germanōs quae invitārent eōs, uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, pollicērenturque omnia, quae postulāssent⁴, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germāni lātius vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, qui sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Caesar, rē frūmentariā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis⁵, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanōs audiēbat.

46. Cum ab hoste octō milia passuum abesset, aciem triplicem Institui equitātumque agmen subaequi iussit, et celeriter itinere confectō prius⁶ ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germāni sentire possent. Qui celeritāte adventūs nostri perterriti, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō⁷, perturbantur, cōpiāsne⁸ adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an

¹ Translate by *with*, literally by *means of*. Translate *itinere* . . . *cōnfectō* by *having covered* . . . *distance*.

² For the tense see 681. b; = *cōsumēverat* (755. i).

³ Translate by *would be the case*; = *futura esse*. Translate *facta* (*esse*) by *had happened*.

⁴ See footnote 5, page 14; = *postulāvissent* (753. i).

⁵ Translate by *levied*. Omit *locis* in translation, and see footnote 5, page 26.

⁶ *Prius . . . quam* = *priusquam*, to be taken with *possent* (650. b, and fn.).

⁷ Translate by *and having no time for holding*, etc.

⁸ Translate *-ne* . . . *an* . . . *an* by *whether* . . . *or* . . . *or*. See 536 (last example).

fugā salutem petere praestaret. Qui¹ celeriter arma capere poterunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carrōs impedimenta-que proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhēnumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos consecutandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

To prevent any further inroads, Caesar builds a bridge across the Rhine, and crossing into Germany, so overawes the German tribes that at his approach they flee into the forests of the interior.

47. Germāni post tergum clamōre auditō, cum suōs interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militāribus relictis sē ex castris eiecērunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rhēni pervenissent, reliquā² fugā dēspērātā magnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitudine, vi flūminis oppressi perierunt³. Nostri ad unum⁴ omnes incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tantī belli timōre⁵, cum hostiam numerus capitum quadringentōrum trigintā milium fuisset, sē in castra recēperunt.

48. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse transeundum; quārum illa fuit iustissima⁶, quod, cum vidēret Germānos tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus⁷ eos timēre voluit, cum intellexerent et posse et audere populi Rōmāni exercitum Rhēnum transire. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās erat faciendī pontis propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen flūmen ponte jungere⁸ decrevit. Diebus decem, quibus⁹ māteria coepta erat comportari,

¹ Translate by *those who*. Translate *suis* below by *their families*.

² Translate by *further*; see footnote 7, page 28.

³ From *perēd*. Translate *oppressi* by *overcome*.

⁴ Translate by *to a man*.

⁵ Translate by *after* (or *relieved from*) *all their dread of a formidable war*. Translate *cum* by *for*. For the case of *milium* see 58d. viii.

⁶ Translate by *the strongest*. For *quod* see footnote 3, page 35.

⁷ Translate by *interests* or *security* (578).

⁸ Translate by *to bridge the river*.

⁹ Translate by *within ten days after*, literally *within the ten days within which* (621). For *coepta erat*, *had begun*, see 518. ii.

omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem¹ pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus² liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambri finibus suis exceserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in solitūdinem ac silvās³ abdiderant.

49. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si⁴ ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab iis cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteaquā per explorātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō concessiō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisisse, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent⁵, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenirent: hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse⁶. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rēbus iis cōfectis, quārum rērum causā⁷ trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum injiceret⁸, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omninō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum cōsumptis sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

¹ Translate by *end*.

² Translate by *on their asking for*.

³ Translate by *in the solitude of the forests* (618. vi).

⁴ Translate by *in case*. For the subjunctive see 672.

⁵ The three subjunctive clauses depend on the idea of *telling* implied in *nūntiōs dimisisse*; translate by *instructing them to*, etc. (661).

⁶ Co-ordinate with *dimisisse*.

⁷ Translate by *having attained all the objects for which*.

⁸ Translate by *namely to inspire*, etc. For the dative see 677. The *ut* clauses are in apposition with *rēbus*.



Roman Sword.

C. JULII CAESARIS
COMMENTARII
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsui fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocatis ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque qui essent ad mājōrum navium mūltitūdinem idōnei portūs, repēire poterat.

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

✓ 21. Ad haec cōgnoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāsitus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regionibus et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum senecerat classem jubet convenire. Interim consilio ejus cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, a complūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberaliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eos domum remittit, et cum iis unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superātis rēgem ibi constituerat, cūjus et virtutem et consiliū probabat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cūjusque auctoritās in hīs regionibus magni habēbatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitatēs hortaturque, ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur, sequē celeriter eo venturū nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui nāvi egredi ac se barbaris committere nō auderet, quinto diē ad Caesarem revertitur quāeqū ibi perspexisset renūnciat.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.

✓ 22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandarū cōmōratur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī veni-

runt quī se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperati bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar ^{hominē condidit} opportune accidisse² arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum his numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit.

Nāvis circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea nāvium longarum habebat, quaestori legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant duodeviginti¹ onerariae nāves, quae ex eo loco ab milibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.

✓ 23. ^{having arranged this matter} His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad nāvigandum tempestatem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et nāves conscendere et se sequi iussit. ^{as there a little before came a storm} A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diē circiter quartā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas

3 hostium cōpiās armātās conspexit. Cūjus loci haec erat
 nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continebatur, utī
 4 ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad
 ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum
 reliquae, nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris
 5 exspectavit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convo-
 catīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet
 ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut mari-
 timae rēs postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem
 mōtum haberent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnes rēs ab
 6 iis administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum
 unō tempore nactus secundum, dato signō et sublatīs
 ancoris circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō progressus
 apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs constituit.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

1 24. At barbari cōsiliō. Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō
 equitatū et essedāriis, quō plerūque genere in proeliis uti
 consueverunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecuti nōstros nāvibus ēgredi
 2 prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultas, quod
 nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in alto constitui nō
 poterant, militibus autem ignotis locis impeditis mānibus,
 māgnō et grāvī onere armorum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus
 dēsiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus
 3 erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in
 aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis
 locis audācter tela conjicerent et equos insuēfactos in-
 4 citārent. Quibus rēbus nōstrī perterriti atque hūjus
 omninō generis pūgnae imperiti nōn eādē alacritātē ac
 studio, quō in pedestribus uti proeliis cōsuērant, utēbantur.

Caesar manoeuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās quārum¹ et speciēs erat barbaris inusitatio et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis nāvibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac submoveri iussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium² figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormenta a permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime³ propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legionis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deos, ut ea res legiōnī feliciter eveniret: "Dēsilitē," inquit, "militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex⁴ nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum⁵ nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitteretur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus cum cōspexissent subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen,¹ quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadiis, ubi ex² litore aliquos singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucos cir-

cumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla con-
 4 jiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās
 longārū nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus com-
 plērī jussit et, quōs laborantēs cōspexerat, his subsidia
 5 submittebat. Nostri, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis
 omnibus cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eos
 in rugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequi potuērunt,
 quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn
 potuerant. (Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī
 defuit.

The Britons sue for peace.

- 1 27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā
 recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt;
 obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs pollicitī sunt.
- 2 Ūnā cum his lēgātis Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprā
 dēmōstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.
- 3 Hunc illi ē nāvī egressum, cum ad eos orātōris modo
 Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vin-
 4 cula conjēcērunt, tum proeliō factō remisērunt. In petendā
 pāce ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et
 5 propter imprudentiam ut ignōscrētur petivērunt. Caesar
 questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis
 pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent,
 6 ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum
 illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus
 7 locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. / In-
 tereā suos remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, principēsque un-
 dique convenire et sē civitatēque suās Caesarī commendāre
 coepērunt.

A portion of Caesar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm and driven back to the mainland.

28. His rebus pāce confirmātā post diem quārtum, 1
quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēviginti, de
quibus suprà dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,
ex supēiore portū lenī vento solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquarent
Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta
tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre
posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant, protectae, referrentur.
aliae ad inferiōrē in partē insulae, quae est propius solis
occāsum, magnō sui cum periculō dējicerentur; quae tamen
ancorīs jactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō ad-
versā noctē in altum protectae continentem petierunt.

The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Caesar, and causes much alarm in the camp.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs 1
maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit,
nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās 2
nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trāsportandum cūrāverat
quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerariās,
quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictabat
neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandi
dabātur. Compluribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum
funibus, ancorīs reliquisque armamentis āmissis ad navi-
gandum inūtiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere,
tōtius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim nāvēs
erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant,
quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus
constabat niemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in
locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.

- 1 30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frumentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis
 2 Caesar legiōnēs trāsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt rebellione factā frumentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod his superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēmīnem postea bellī inferendī causā in
 3 Britanniam trāsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rursus conjūratiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.

- 1 31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābatur.
 2 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frumentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur et quae ad eas rēs erant
 3 usuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studio ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmis reliquīs ut nāvīgārī commodē posset, effecit.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons. Caesar goes to its relief.

- 1 32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine unā, frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ullā

ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum
 in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ii qui
 pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiāverunt
 pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in eā parte
 videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod
 erat, suspicātus, aliquid novi ā barbaris initum consilii,
 cohortēs, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem
 proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortēs succedere,
 reliquās armari et confestum sese subsequi iussit. Cum
 paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi
 atque aegre sustinere et confertā legione ex omnibus parti-
 bus tela conjici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis
 partibus demessō frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicāti
 hostes hūc nostros esse ventūros noctū in silvis delituerant,
 tum dispersos depositis armis in metendō occupatos subito
 adorti paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus pertur-
 bāverant, simul equitatū atque essedis circumdederant.)

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primō per omnes
 partes persequuntur et tela conjiciunt atque ipso terrore
 equorum et strepitū rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant
 et cum se inter equitum turmas insinnaverunt, ex essedis
 desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim
 ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a
 multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos recep-
 tum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem
 peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et
 exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipitio loco
 incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et

the horse
per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugo insistere et sē inde in
the horse
currus citissimē recipere consuerint. *the one*

On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days in collecting larger forces.

1 34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitatē pūgnae
when in this way were thrown into confusion by the novelty of a big battle
tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque
ejus adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre re-
cēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad com-
mittendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suō sē
loco continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs
reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupatis,
4 quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt con-
tinuōs complūrēs diēs tempestates, quae et nostrōs in cas-
5 tris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim
barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitatemque
nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praetiae
faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandī facultās daretur,
6 et Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmonstrāvērunt. His
rēbus celeriter magnā multitudine peditātis equitātisque
coacta ad castra vēnerunt.

When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.

1 35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat,
that he saw, being precisely the same what happened
fore videbat, ut, si essent hostēs pūsi, celeritatē periculum
effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trigintā quos
Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, secūm trān-
sportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Com-
missō proelio diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs
3 ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatio

secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subjiendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit: quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eisdem, quos reliqui, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the Morini, but is rescued by Caesar.

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adfuerunt primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga vertunt magnisque eorum numerus est occisus.

After crushing this uprising Caesar arranges his winter camps.

1 38. Caesar postero diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis
 legionibus, quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in Morinōs, qui
 2 rebellionem fecerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitatem
 paludum, quō se reciperent, non haberent, quō superiore
 anno pertugio fuerant usi, omnes ferē in potestatem La-
 3 biēni pervēnerunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī
 in Menapiōrum finēs legiones dūxerant, omnibus eorum
 agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod
 Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdidērunt, se ad
 4 Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum
 hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia
 5 obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexērunt. His rebus gestis
 ex litteris Caesaris diērum viginti supplicatio a senātu
 decreta est.



Legionary Soldier.

LIBER QUINTUS.

Caesar orders more vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus, ^{in the consulship} discedens ab 1 hibernis Caesar ^{in the consulship} in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuevit, ^{as he used to do} legatis imperat, quos legionibus ^{and placed in command} praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naues aedificandas veteresque re-
ficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat.

Ad celeritatem ^{in building} onerandi subductionesque paulo facit hu-
miliores, quam quibus in nostro mari ^{in the consulship} uti consuevimus, ^{as he used to do} atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes ^{frequent changes} aestuum ^{much winds} magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad ^{in the consulship} opera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo ^{in the consulship} latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has ^{in the consulship} omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas ^{in the consulship} multum adiuuat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naues, ^{in the consulship} ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae ^{in the consulship} citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis

finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat.

Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in ^{in the consulship} locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ^{in the consulship} ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico

factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant, omnibus ^{in the consulship} rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum ^{in the consulship} Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet;

nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demon-
strat. His ad diem adductis ut imperaverat, arbitros inter ^{in the consulship} civitates dat, qui item aestiment poenamque constituent.

Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

1 2. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in citi-
riorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum profici-
2 citur. Eo cum vēnisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulāri
militum studiō in summa omnium rerum inopiā circiter
sescentās ejus generis, cūsuprā demonstrāvimus, naves
et longās viginti octo, invenit instructas, neque multum
3 abesse ab eo, quin paucis diēbus dedūci possint. (Col-
laudatis militibus atque iis qui negotiō prae fuerant, quid
fieri vellet ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire
jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam tra-
jectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum trigintā
ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum
4 reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equiti-
bus octingentis in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī
neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperiō parēbant, Ger-
mānosque Trānsrhenānos sollicitare dicebantur.

Two rival chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Caesar.

1 3. Haec civitas longē plurimum totius Galliae equitatū
valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut
2 suprā demonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitate duo de
principatū inter se contendebant, Indutiomārus et Cinge-
3 torix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque
adventū cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in
officiō futurōs, neque ab amicitia populi Romāni defectūros
4 confirmavit, quaeque in Trēveris gererentur, ostendit. At
Indutiomārus equitatum peditatumque cōgere, iisque, qui

per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed postquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt, et de suis privatis rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatus ad Caesarem mittit: sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laboretur; itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque si Caesar, permetteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission of Indutiomarus.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aetatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, ut in officio maneret: nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod cum merito ejus a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, ejus tam egregiam in se voluntatem

his countrymen should be as strong as possible whose good will towards himself he perceived to be extraordinary.

Chap 4, sec 3. left out.

1 perspexisset. Id tūc factum graviter Indūtiomārus
 suam grātiā inter suos minui, et qui jam ante inimicō in
 nōs animō fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

Coming to the seaport Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.

1 5. His rebus constitūtis Caesar ad portum Itium cum
 2 legiōibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit sexagintā nāvēs, quae
 in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectās cursum tenere
 nōn potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse;
 reliquās paratās ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in-
 3 structās invenit. Eodem equitātus tōtiūs Galliae convenit
 numero milium quattuor, principesque ex omnibus civitati-
 4 bus; ex quibus perpaucos, quōrum in se fidem perspexerat,
 relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere
 decreverat, quod cum ipse ab eo motum Galliae vere-
 batur.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious man, causes trouble.

1 6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quo ante
 ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis con-
 stituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum
 imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallōs auctoritatis
 2 cognōverat. Accēdebat hūc, quod in concilio Aedūrum

Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare regnū civitātis dēterri;
 quod dictum Aedui graviter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut
 deprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant.

3 Id factum ex suis hospitiibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille
 omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā
 relinqueretur; partim quod insuetus navigandi mare time-
 4 ret; partim quod religiōibus impediri sese diceret. Postea-
 quam id obstinatē sibi negari vidit, omni spē impetrandi

ademptis principibus Galliae sollicitare, convocare singulos
 hortisque coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu ter-
 ritare; non sine causâ fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate
 spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu
 Galliae interficere videretur, hos omnes in Britanniam
 traductos necaret; idem reliquis interponere, iusjurandum
 poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi
 consilio administrarent. Haec à compluribus ad Caesarem
 deferbantur.

*Caesar delays his departure in order to check disaffection. Dumnorix
 flees, but is overtaken and slain.*

7. Quâ re cognita, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae i
 dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, qui-
 buscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat: quod i
 longius ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne
 quid sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter 3
 viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Cōrus ventus
 navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis tem-
 poris in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio
 Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus
 consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem
 milites equitesque conscenderunt in naves jubet. At omnium s
 impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum à
 castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quâ re c
 nuntiata Caesar intermissa protectione atque omnibus rebus
 postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum
 mittit, retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, i
 internicij jubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum
 arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim

revo^{ca}tus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aeduī ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

- 1 8. His rebus gestis Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relictō, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam prōvideret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et parī numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lenī Africō proventus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nō tenuit, et longius delatus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit.
- 2 Tum rursus aestūs commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, quā optimum esse egressum superiōre aestate cognōverat. Quā in re admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriis gravibusque nāvibus nō intermissō remigandi labore longarum nāvium cursum sadaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognōvit, cum māgnae manus eō convenissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privatisque, quās sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae unō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac se in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

9. Caesar exposito exercitū et locō castris idoneo capto, 1
 ubi ex captivis cognovit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cō-
 sedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus
 trecentis (qui praesidio nāvibus essent) de tertiā vigiliā ad
 hostes contendit, eo minus veritus nāvibus (quod in litore
 molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat); et
 praesidio nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctū 2
 progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiae
 conspicatus est. Illi, equitatū atque essedis ad flūmen 3
 progressi, ex locō superiore nostrōs prohibere et proelium
 committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatū sē in silvas 4
 abdidērunt locum hacti egregiē et naturā et opere munitum,
 quod domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa jam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus 5
 erant praecclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrōsque 6
 intra munitiōes ingredi prohibebant. At milites legiōnis 7
 septimae testudine facta et aggerē ad munitiōnē adjecto
 locum cēperunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneri-
 bus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi 8
 vetuit, et quod loci naturā ignorābat, et quod magna
 parte diēi consumptā munitiōi castrōrum tempus relinqui
 volebat.

As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

10. Postridiē ejus diēi mane tripartitō milites equitesque 1
 in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur.
 His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extrēmī essent 2
 in prospectū, equites a Q. Atrio ad Caesarem vēērunt, qui

nūntiarent superiōre nocte m̄ximā coortā tempestāte prope
omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litore ējectās esse, quod neque
ancorae fūnēque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātō-
rēsque vim tempestātis p̄c̄i possent ; itaque ex eō concursū
nāvium m̄gnum esse incommodum acceptum.

*Caesar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again
sets out against the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.*

1 11. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs
2 revertitur ; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterisque cōgnō-
verat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter quadrāgintā
nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse m̄gnō negōtiō vidēren-
3 tur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī
4 aliōs arcessī jubet. Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās
posset, iīs legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs instituat.
5 Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen com-
modissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum
6 castris unā mūnitiōne conjungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs
decem cōsumit, nē nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labō-
7 rem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque
ēgregiē mūnītis eādem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus
8 reliquit : ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cum
vēnisset, mājorēs jam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britan-
nōrum convēnerant, {summā imperiī bellique administrandī
commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō,} cūjus finēs ā
maritimis civitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tame-
9 sis, ā marī circiter milia passuum octōgintā. Huic superiōre
tempore cum reliquis civitātibus continentia bella interces-
serant : sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī
bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

nocturnus, a, um,

A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.

12. (Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt) ^{crossed} maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causam ex Belgio transierunt (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. ^{multitudo} ^{creberrimaque} ^{aedificia} ^{fere} ^{Gallie} ^{consimilia}, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur [aut aere] aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ^{sed} ^{ejus} ^{exigua} ^{est} ^{copia}; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque alietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. ^{Loca sunt temperatiora} quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

The geography of Britain.

13. Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; quam ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia; sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subjectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub

When pars is used meaning the direction in which it takes the ablative in.

night 1 brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil de eō percontationibus
 reperiebāmus, nisi tertis ex aquā mēsuris breviores esse
 5 quam in continentī noctēs videbāmus. Hūjus est longitudo
 lateris, ut fert illōrum opinio, septingentōrum milium.
 6 Tertium est contrā septentriones; cui parti nulla est objecta
 terra, sed ejus angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam
 spectat. Hōc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem
 7 esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs
 centum milium passuum. /

The manners and customs of the Britons.

1 14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt humanissimī, quī Cantium
 incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a
 2 Gallicā differunt consuetūdine. Interiores plerique frumenta
 nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt
 vestiti. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod
 caeruleum facit colorem, atque hōc horridiores sunt in
 3 pūgnā aspectū. Illi quoque sunt promissō, atque omni parte
 4 corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs
 habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnēs, et maximē
 5 frātrēs cum fratribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed, si quī
 sunt ex his nāti, eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō
 quaeque dēducta est.

The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive off the enemy.

1 15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique acriter proeliō cum
 equitātū nostrō in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri
 omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eōs in silvās
 2 collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius
 3 insecūti nōnnullōs ex suis amisērunt. At illi intermissō

but after a short time

spatió imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitiōne
 castrorum subito sē ex silvis ējēcērunt, impetūque in eos
 factō, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, ācriter
 pūgnāvērunt: duābusque missis subsidio cohortibus ā
 Caesare, atque his primis legionum dūarum, cum hae
 perexiguo intermisso loci spatiō inter se constitissent, novo
 genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audācissimē
 perrūpērunt sequētesque eos peremerunt. Eo diē Q. S.
 Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi plūri-
 bus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.



Armor and Weapons.

The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.

- 1 16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere, addere minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem; equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicant, propterea quod illi etiam consilio plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostris removissent, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelioratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accidit hinc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnaeque intervallis proeliantur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constituerunt, rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nos eos equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum C. Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non abisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto repulserunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt; magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi

they were then no opportunity rallying or taking up a position or of dropping down from their chariots

facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fugā protinus, quē undique
convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus
umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar forces a passage across the Thames.

18. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flūmen Tamesim
in finē Cassivellaunī exercitum duxit; quod flūmen uno
omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc egre, transiri potest. Eo
cum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis ripam

magnās esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat
acutis sudibus praefixa, ejusdemque generis sub
aqua defixae sudēs flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis

ā captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitātū confestim
legiones subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritate atque eo impetū
militēs ierunt, cum capite sōlo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes
impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere nō possent,
ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

*Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of
march.*

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà demonstrāvimus, omni de
positā spē contentiōnis, dimissis amplius copiis, milibus
circiter quattuor essedariis relictis, itinera nostra serva-
bat, paulumque ex viā excēdebat locisque peditis ac
silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus
nos iter factūros cognoverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agris
in silvās compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius
praecedandi vāstandique causā se in agros eiecērat, omnibus
viis semisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat, et magno
cum periculō nostrorum equitum cum iis configebat atque

This means that Caesar prohibited him from going further.
 hoc metu citius vagari prohibebat. [Relinquēbatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii miles efficere poterant.]

The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Caesar.

1 20. Interim Trinobantēs, propi firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēns Caesaris. Item secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam v. erat, cuius pater in eā civitate regnum obtinuerat, interfecti quātū at a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitaverat, legatos a Caesarem mittunt pollice turque sēsē ei dediturū atque imperata factūrōs petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injūria Cassivellaunī defendat, atque in civitatē mittat qui pater sit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadragintā frumentumque crevitū Mandubraci, neque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata telē et fecerūt. Obsidēs ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar captures the 'town' of Cassivellaunus.

1 21. Trinobantibus defēsis neque ab omni militum injūria prohibitis, guntiāci, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, 2 Cassi legationib; n. s. e. Caesarī dēdunt. Ab his cognoscit non longē e. o. oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvis paludibusque, quo satis magnū hominū 3 perorisque numerus erit. Oppidum autem Britanni is vāllō atque fossā mūnierunt, q. i. incu. i. hostium itandae causā convenire cōsueverunt. Sciscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit

works sufficient to prevent

regiō nātūrā et opere mūnitum ; tamen huius duābus partibus opugnare contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātis itum nostrum impetum nōn tulērunt, seseque aliā ex parte oppidī eiecerunt. Magnū ibi numerus pecoris peritus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēsi et interfec-

A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and the Gauls are driven for prey.

22. Dum in hīs locis geruntur Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quatuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, et alii, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra nāvālia de improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra vēnissent, 2 nostri eruptione factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vastātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus defectione civitatum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium de dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōstituisset hiemā continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intel- obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit ; interdici imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobante noceat.

Caesar returns to the mainland.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductis, quod et captivōrum magnum numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant

nāvēs, duobus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit.
3 Ac sic accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōni-
bus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis,
4 quae militēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iis, quae inānēs
ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs
expositis militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrā-
verat numerō sexāgintā, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae
5 ferē omnēs rējicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar
frustrā expectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne excludē-
rētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius
6 militēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā
initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēs-
que incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.



Roman Soldiers on the March.



WRIGHT.

NOTES ON BOOK IV, CHAPS. 20-38.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the High School Latin Book. The following abbreviations are used: cf.=compare; ch., chap.=chapter; fn.=footnote; lit.=literally; sc.=supply, or understand; trans.=translate or translation

CHAP. 20.

1. **exigua**: emphatic from position. **parte reliqua**: abl. absolute (548); equivalent to an *etsi* clause (543); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Caesar made an effort.' **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **ad septentriones vergit**: 'lies towards the north.' **bellis**: for case see 159. **hostibus subministrata**: sc. *esse* (514. iii); 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. **si**: 'even if.' **gerendum**: see 611. **deficeret**: 'did not enable him,' lit.? (670; 687. b). **usui**: see 431. **fore**: see 327; the subject is contained in the clauses *si modo . . . cognovisset. adisset*: for *adiisset* (755. i. b). For the pluperfect subjunctive used in indirect discourse, secondary sequence, for the future perfect of direct discourse, see 687. b; trans. 'approached,' the literal translation being 'should have approached,' not 'had already approached.' **genus hominum**: 'the character of the inhabitants.' **quae omnia**: 'all of which,' lit.? (586. vi. a). **fere**: with *omnia*.

3. **neque . . . quisquam**: 'no one,' lit.? **illo**: adverb. **iis ipsis**: i.e., *mercatoribus*. **Gallias**: 'Gaul.' The plural has reference to the triple division of Gaul with which Caesar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War: *Gallia est omnia divisa in partes tres* (page 13).

4. **vocatis**: trans. by 'although' (542. i. a). **quanta esset . . . portus**: depending on *reperire poterat* (362). **belli**: 'in war' (586. ii). **quibus . . . uterentur**: 'what manners and customs they had' (356). **qui essent . . . portus**: 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' **majorum**: 'larger than usual' (593. iii); the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. **poterat**: for the imperfect see 678. b. *proam*



CHAP. 21.

1. *Ad haec cognoscenda* : with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum* (611). *priusquam faceret* : 'before making' (650. b). *idoneum* : 'a suitable person.' *arbitratus* : see 540. fn.
2. *Huic* : for the case see 553. *ut exploratis . . . revertatur* : for the subjunctive see 424 ; trans. 'to find out . . . and return' (542. i. c). *quam primum* : see 668. i.
3. *in* : trans. 'into the country of.' *inde . . . trajectus* : the straits of Dover are meant.
4. *quam . . . classem* : 'the fleet which' (666. b. i). *ad* : 'for.' *Veneticum bellum* : the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.
5. *qui polliceantur* : trans. 'to promise' ; see 388. *dare* : irregularly used for *se daturos esse* (512 ; 514. ix). *imperio* : see 553.
6. *Quibus, eos* : both referring to *legati* (550. ii. and fn.) ; trans. *quibus* by 'these' (667). *liberaliter pollicitus* : '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit ? (704. c). *permanerent* : see 424. *domum* : see 618.
7. *una* : adv. *Commium* : with *mittit*. *superatis* : referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people the Atrebatas were allied (see pages 24-30). *constituerat* : 'had made.' *ibi* : i.e., among the Atrebatas. *his* : of Gaul, not Britain. *magni habebatur* : 'was valued highly' ; for *in ipso*, see 587.
8. *quas . . . civitates* : 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can' ; sc. *adire*. *possit* : see 408. *adeat* : with the same force as *ut adeat*, 'to visit' ; so *hortetur* and *nuntiat* (686. c and fn.). *ut fide u sequantur* : 'to embrace the alliance,' or (with Holmes) 'to trust to the good faith,' depending on *hortetur*.
9. *regionibus* : 'country.' *quantum, etc.* : 'so far as one could who,' etc. ; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one who' ; for *tantum facultatis quantum* (668. ii), 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' The whole clause has the value of an adverbial acc. modifying the abl. absol. *auderet* : for mood see 530. *quaeque* : = *et quae*. *perspexisset* : see 534. i.

CHAP. 22.

1. *parandarum*: see 611. *moratur*: for the tense see 273. c. *de . . . consilio*: 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. *quod*, etc.: 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. *consuetudinis*: see 429. c. This 'custom' was, as the Roman poet Virgil expressed it:

'The ways of peace to proclaim,
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

populo: trans. by 'on' (578). *fecissent*: for mood see 640. *-que*: joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*. *ex quae*: 'whatever.' *imperasset*: see on *adiacet*, ch. 20, 2.

2. *satis*: 'quite.' *post tergum*: 'behind him.' *has tantularum*, etc.: 'attention to such trivial matters,' lit. ? (586. ii). *anteponendas*: sc. *esse*. *Britanniae*: dat. (577); meaning the expedition against Britain. *iis imperat*: 'requires (or demands) of them' (553. ii). *Quibus*: the hostages; trans. as in ch. 21, 6. *eos*: the Morini. *in fidem recepit*: 'received under his protection.'

3. *coactis contractisque*: the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. *quot*: 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as'; *quot* is subject of *esse*. *quod*, etc.: 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit. ? (586. iii). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit*.

4. *Huc accedebant*: 'besides these there were,' lit. 'to this were added.' *ab*: used adverbially - 'away'; or trans. 'at a distance of.' *milibus*: see 598. *passuum*: see 586. iii. *tenebantur quo minus*, etc.: 'were detained . . . and prevented from being able.' *Quo minus*, lit. 'whereby the less,' may also be written as one word. *possent*: see 631.

5. *ducendum*: for the gerundive with *do*, here agreeing with *exercitum*, see 613.

CHAP. 23.

1. *ad navigandum* : see 444. *tertia vigilia* : the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. *solvit* : sc. *naves*. *ulteriorem* : 'farther,' i.e., up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. *A quibus . . . administratum* : 'as these carried out their instructions,' lit. ? For the impersonal passive see 556. For *tardius*, 'too slowly,' see 593. iii. The result was that Caesar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus*. *expositas copias armatas* : 'the armed forces displayed.'

3. *Cujus* : 'this' (667). *haec* : 'as follows' ; more fully explained by *atque . . . continebatur*. *ita anguste*, etc. : 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), to be translated 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.'] *uti* : another form for *ut* ; distinguish from *uti*. *in* : trans. 'to.' *posset* : for the mood see 371.

4. *dum convenirent* : depending on *expectavit* ; 'till . . . should assemble,' or more freely 'for . . . to assemble' (649. b). *ad* : 'until.'

5. *quae fieri vellet* : 'what he wished done' (517). *monuit . . . administrarentur* : 'instructed them to do everything (promptly) at the signal and at the (right) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' *ut ratio . . . ut res* : *ut* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. *postularent* : for mood see 665 and 670. *ut quae* : i.e., *maritimae res* ; 'inasmuch as these' ; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (665). *monuit administrarentur* : with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur* ; cf. *adeat*, ch. 21, 8 (686. c and fn.). *ad nutum et ad tempus* : the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. *uno* : 'one and the same.' *dato, sublati* : trans. by principal clauses (542. i. c). *litore* : abl. absolute ; trans. by 'off.'

CHAP. 24.

1. *quo genere*: 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind' (i.e., of warriors), referring to both *equitatu* and *essodariis* (666. b. ii). *consuerunt*: cf. 755. i. a. *copiis*: see 596. iii. *egredi*: 'from landing' (518. i). *prohibebant*: for tense see 678. c.

2. *has*: referring to what follows. *nisi . . . non*: 'only,' lit. ? *militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat*: 'while the soldiers had to leap down' (612. i); similarly *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. For the dative see 354. *ignotis locis*: 'who were unacquainted with the ground'; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown'; abl. absolute (548). So *impeditis manibus*. *oppressis*: dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. *cum illi*: 'whereas the enemy.' *ex arido*: modifying *conjecterent*. *omnibus . . . locis*: in contrast to *ignotis . . . manibus*, section 2; 'having all their limbs free and being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit. ? *insuefactos*: 'who were trained (to this).' *conjecterent, incitarent*; an adversative force is combined with the temporal (563. a).

4. *generis*: see 589. *eadem . . . quo*: for agreement see 506. i; for *quo* = 'as' see 668. *consuerant*: see 755. i. a. *uti, uterentur*: 'display' or 'show.'

CHAP. 25.

1. *Quod*: object of *animadvertit* (667. i). *naves*: subject of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui*. *quarum*: 'whose.' *inusitatio*: 'less familiar,' i.e., than that of the *naves onerariae*. *et motus, etc.*; 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service,' i.e., 'and which were more easily handled.' *ad*: 'on.' *apertum latus*: i.e., the right side, unprotected by shields. *quae res*: 'a manoeuvre which,' or 'this manoeuvre,' lit. ? *usui*: as in ch. 20, 2.

2. *remorum motu*: the Britons used only sails with their large vessels. *paulum modo*: 'but only a little.'

3. *atque*; 'and now.' *cunctantibus*: trans. by 'while' (540, 542. ii). *qui aquilam ferebat*: 'the eagle-bearer.' For *qui* = *is qui* see 666. a. *ut . . . eveniret*: see 424. *ea res*: 'his (lit. that)

undertaking or attempt.' *legioni* : see 578. *inquit* : 'cried'; for position and use see 514. vi. *Desilite* : the imperative. *vultis* : from *volo*. *praestitero* : trans. freely by future; for the force of the future perfect see 682. b.

4. *voce magna* : 'in a loud voice' (596. iii).

5. *inter se* : 'one another,' lit.? (662. ii). *ne . . . admitteretur* : 'not to incur,' lit.? (424). *dedecus* ; i.e., the loss of the eagle. *universi* : 'in a body' or 'all together'; section 6 shows that Caesar is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. *Hos item*, etc. : 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.' *hostibus* : see 553. *appropinquant* : see 755. i. a.

CHAP. 26.

1. *Pugnatum est* : see 556. *alius alia ex navi* : 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see 662. i. *quibuscumque . . . occurrerat* : 'to whatever . . . they fell in with.' For the dat. see 577. For the tense see 681. c. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. *vero* : 'while.' *ubi* : 'whenever.' *adoriebantur* : trans. by 'would' (678. b). So *circumstebant* and *coniciebant*. *plures* : nominative.

3. *in universos* : 'at the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. *item* : '(and) also.' *quos . . . his* : freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,' without transposing. *jussit*, *submittebat* : notice the change of tense; the perfect expresses a single command; for the imperfect see 678. b. *his* : see 578.

5. *simul* : = *simul atque*. *suis consecutis* : 'with their comrades following' or 'followed by their comrades' (550. i). *neque* : 'but . . . not.' *longius* : 'any distance' (593. iii). *ad pristinam*, etc. : 'to (complete) Caesar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see 582.

CHAP. 27.

1. *proelio*: trans. by 'in' (145). *de*: trans. 'to treat (or sue) for.' *daturus*: sc. *se* (514. x). *quaeque*: as in ch. 21, 9. *imperasset*: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. *quem supra*, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc.; lit.? (514. vi). *demonstraveram a Caesare*: notice that Caesar the writer (first person) is always distinguished from Caesar the commander (third person). English usage would require the perfect tense here.

3. *Hunc, illi*: object and subject respectively of *comprehenderunt*. *egressum*: modifying *hunc*; trans. 'on his landing' or 'when he landed.' *cum deferret*: 'although he was bearing' (563. a). *modo*: 'in the character of'; or freely, 'as' (596. iii). *tum*: trans. by 'now.'

4. *rei*: 'act.' *imprudentiam*: i.e., their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. *ut ignosceretur*: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (424 and 557; see also 704. c).

5. *quod . . . intulissent*: see 640. *cum . . . missis . . . petissent*: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (563. a). *petissent*: see 755. i. b. *ignoscere*: sc. *se*: notice the tense (327). *imprudentiae*: for dat. see 553.

6. *illi*: see 653. vii. *arcessitam . . . daturus*: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturus*, not to *dixerunt* (540). *diebus*: see 621.

7. *suos*: subject of *remigrare*. *agros*: 'their lands.'

CHAP. 28.

1. *His rebus*: 'by this means,' lit.? *post diem . . . ventum*: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam*, etc.; *post* (the adverb) coming before *die quarto* was felt to have the force of a preposition, and made to govern the acc. *quantum*: the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. *est ventum*: see 556. *naves*: subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. *demonstratum est*: 'mention has been made.' (704. c.) *superiore*: in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem*. *vento*: see 596. iii.

2. *viderentur*: 'were in sight.' *posset*: see 371. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. *inferiorem*: i.e., towards the S.W. *propius occasum*: see 589. v. *sui*: 'to themselves' (586. ii); another reading is *suo*, with the same trans.

3. *quae tamen*, etc.: 'and as (*cum*) these had nevertheless (i.e., in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceding, 'however as these.' *necessario* . . . *profectae* . . . *petierunt*: 'they were forced to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? *adversa nocte*: 'in the face of the night,' lit. 'the night facing them' (548).

CHAP. 29.

1. *nocte*: that of August 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. *esset*: 'there was' (371). *qui dies*: 'a time which.' (666. b. ii). *maritimos aestus maximos*: 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. *consuevit*: 'is wont' or trans. by 'usually.' *incognitum*: the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 25 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. *uno*: as in ch. 23, 6. *naves* . . . *complebat*: keep the Latin order and trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias* . . . *afflictabat*. *quibus*: 'in (i.e. with) which.' *transportandum* . . . *curaverat*: 'had had . . . brought over' (613). *ad*: 'at.' *neque ulla*: 'and no,' lit.? *administrandi, auxiliandi*: the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. *administrandi*: sc. *naves*.

3. *fractis*: trans. both abl. absol. and *cum* by 'as.' *amissis*: trans. 'having lost' or 'through the loss of.' *magna*, etc.; 'great alarm inevitably (or as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.; lit.? *id quod*: 'a thing which' (666. d); *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna* . . . *facta est*, and *quod* is subject of *accidere* (635). *exercitus*: for case see 586. ii.

4. *neque aliae*: trans. by 'no other.' *possent*: see 530. *omnibus constabat*: 'it was generally understood'; more lit. 'it was agreed among all'; for dat. see 579. b. *hiemari oportere*: 'that they must winter' (556 and 634). *in hiemem*: 'for the winter.'

CHAP. 30.

1. This sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., after *collocuti*, *transportaverat* and *producere* (506); trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt; intellegebant et cognoscebant; itaque duxerunt; nam confidebant*. *principes*: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. *inter se*: see 662. ii. *Romanis deesse*: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? *quae*: referring to *castrorum*. *hoc angustiora*: 'all the smaller' or 'more contracted for this reason.'

2. *optimum factu*: 'the best thing to do'; for the supine see 470. b. *duxerunt*: 'concluded.' *rebellione facta*: 'to renew hostilities and.' *prohibere, producere*: subjects of *esse*. *frumento*: see 437. b; so *reditu*. *rem*: 'the campaign.' *superatis*: trans. by 'if' (542. i. a); so *interclusis*. The tense is relative to *transitum* not to *confidebant*. *confidebant*: see 640.

3. *rursus*: not 'a second time,' but referring to the return to their former attitude. *agris*: as in ch. 27, 7. *deducere*: 'to bring down,' i.e., to the coast.

CHAP. 31.

1. *ex eventu navium*: 'from what had happened to his ships,' (586. ii). *ex eo, quod*: 'from the fact that' (640. vii). *fore*, etc.: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' *accidit*: for the mood see 670. i.

2. *ad*: 'for' or to 'meet.' *subsidia comparabat*: 'he set about making provision' (678. c). *quae . . . naves, earum*: = *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which' (666. b. i). *quae*: 'whatever'; sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari*. *res*: 'purpose.' *erant*: for the mood see 670. i. *continenti*: see on Book V, ch. 8, i.

3. *cum . . . administraretur*: 'as the soldiers worked,' cf. ch. 23, 2. *studio*: see 596. iii. *amissis*: trans. by 'although.' *reliquis . . . effecit*: 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' or still more freely (with Holmes) 'he managed to have the rest made tolerably seaworthy,' lit. 'he brought it about (or managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. *navigari*: see 556. *posset*: see 529. iii. *effecit*: notice the tense as compared with the imperfect used in section 2 (680. b).

CHAP. 32.

1. *geruntur*: see 647. *ex consuetudine*: 'as usual'; to be taken with *una*, not *missa*. *frumentatum*: the supine (470. a). *ad*: 'up to.' *interposita*: 'having arisen,' i.e., between the time of the surrender and the present. *cum*: 'as' or 'for,' explaining the preceding words. *hominum*: 'of the people (or natives).' *venitaret*: 'kept coming'; a frequentative verb (758. ii). *quam consuetudo ferret*: 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (670). *in ea . . . partem*: 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see 666. c.

2. *id, quod erat*: 'what was actually the case.' *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid . . . consilii*. *aliquid . . . consilii*: 'some new plan' (586. iii). *initum*: sc. *esse*. *in stationibus*: 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. *ex*: 'of' (586. v). *in stationem succedere*: 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. *reliquas*: i.e., four of the ten cohorts in the legion. *armari*: 'to arm themselves' (656. iv).

3. *paulo longius*: 'some little distance' (593. iii). *conferta*: trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. *una erat reliqua*: 'only one remained.'

5. *disperso*: sc. *nostros*; trans. by a 'when' clause; so *occupatos*. *incertis ordinibus*: 'whose lines were in disorder,' giving the reason for *perturbaverant*; it was difficult to find the proper places in the cohorts. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Caesar's arrival in section 3.

CHAP. 33.

1. *hoc*: 'as follows.' *ex cessedis pugnae*: 'of chariot fighting'; *per omnes partes*: 'in all directions.' *ipso terrore equitum*: 'by the very (or mere) terror caused by their horses'; for the gen. see 429. c. *ordines*: i.e., of their opponents. *equitum*: i.e., their own. Caesar had no cavalry with him. *insinuaverunt*: see 642.

2. *ita*: 'in such a way.' *illi*: i.e., those who had dismounted to fight on foot. *premuntur, habeant*: trans. by the pres. indic.,

and for the mood see 673 and 371 respectively, and also 476; or trans. by 'should' and 'would' respectively, and for the mood of *premanitur* see 478. 2.

3. *tantum efficiunt*: 'become so expert,' lit.? *loco*: 'ground.' *per*: 'along.' *consuerint*; see 755. i. a, and for the mood 371.

CHAP. 34.

1. *quibus rebus*: abl. of means. *perturbatis nostris*: may be dative with *auxilium tulit* (578), or abl. absolute. *novitate*: trans. by 'because of' (595). *adventu*: see 159.

2. *quo facto*: 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done.' *ad*: 'for,' depending on *alienum*. *suo loco*: 'on his own ground' (618. v). *brevi . . . intermisso*: 'after a short interval,' lit.?

3. *haec*: referring to the whole incident. *occupatis*: trans. by 'while.' *qui erant reliqui*: 'those who remained,' i.e., the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (666. a). *discesserunt*: i.e., from their homes to join their countrymen (see ch. 30, 3).

4. *secutae sunt*: 'there followed' (118). *continent, prohiberent*: for the mood see 530.

5. *quanta* 'what an excellent' or 'how favorable.' *faciendae*: 'for obtaining' (611). *sui liberandi*: see 611. iv. *expulissent*: for the mood and tense cf. on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

CHAP. 35.

1. *idem . . . fore*: 'that the same thing would happen.' *ut . . . effugerent*: 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (694). *si*: 'even if.' *essent pulsi*: for the mood and tense cf. *expulissent*, ch. 34, 5. *dictum est*: cf. on *demonstratum est*, ch. 28, 1.

2. *dintius*: 'any longer,' i.e., than the beginning of the battle. (593. iii).

3. *secuti . . . occiderunt*; *sc. nostri*. *tanto spatio*: freely, 'as far,' lit. 'by way of (i.e., over) as great a space' (596. ii. a). *quantum . . . efficere*: 'as their speed and endurance allowed,' *Cursus*=rate of running, *vires*=powers of endurance.

CHAP. 36.

2. **His numerum duplicavit** : 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. **die** : 'the time,' or 'the season'; *dies* is sometimes fem. in the sing., chiefly in the sense of a fixed date. **propinqua . . . navibus**; trans. by 'as' (548). **hiemi . . . subjiendam** : 'they should risk sailing in stormy weather,' lit.?

3. **mediam noctem** : 'midnight' (175).

4. **quae** : 'the ships.' **ex . . . quae** : we should say 'two of the transports,' lit. ? **quos reliqui** : 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense construction (510, fn.). **infra** : i.e., towards the S. W.

CHAP. 37.

1. **Quibus navibus** : the two just mentioned. **castra** : that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. **proficiscens** : 'on setting out' (540). **primo** : adverb. **non ita magno** : 'with a not very large,' lit. ? **si . . . nolent** : 'if they did not wish to be killed' (670); for *see*, see 518. iv.

2. **ad clamorem** : 'in answer to the shouting.' **hominum** : as in ch. 32, 1 : with *milia* (586. iii). **suis auxilio** : 'to aid his men' (431).

3. **amplius horis** : 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (242), or the abl. of time within which (621. i), uninfluenced by *amplius* (593. ii). **paucis** : 'but a few.'

4. **Postea quam** : answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

CHAP. 38.

2. **siccitates** : trans. by the singular; in Latin the plural of an abstract noun (here due to the plural *paludum*) is used to denote various instances of a quality or its existence in different objects. **quo . . . haberent** : 'had no place to which to retreat,' or 'had no place of retreat,' more lit. 'had not whither they could retreat'

(530). *quo . . . usi*: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* cf. 510. i. *perfugio*: 'as a place of refuge' (535. i). *fuertant usi*: see 683. d. *in potestatem pervenerunt*: 'fell into the hands,' lit. ?

3. *omnes*: nominative. *in silvas*: see 618. vi.

4. *in*: 'among' or 'in the country of.' *neglexerunt*: add *in trans.* 'to do so.'

5. *His rebus*: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. *ex litteris Caesaris*: 'in consequence of Caesar's despatches.' *dierum*: see 383. *supplicatio*: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples of Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar had written: "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."



Roman War Galleys

NOTES ON BOOK V, CHAPS. 1-23.

CHAP. 1.

1. *consulibus*: see 548. *discedens ab*: 'on leaving.' *Italiam*: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. *ut*: 'as,' in which sense it takes the indic. *legionibus*: see 577. *quam plurimas possent*: sc. *aedificare*; 'as many as they could' (668. i). For the mood of *possent* see 408. *hieme*: 'during the winter' (621. i). *uti aedificandas curarent*: 'to have built' (613). For the tense of *curarent* see 524. i.

2. *Ad*: 'for.' *onerandi*: trans. by 'in.' *subductiones*: cf. on *siccitates*, IV, ch. 38, 2. *facit humiliores*: sc. *eas*. *quam quibus*: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (242. a. i). *nostro mari*: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. *id eo magis*: 'all the more so'; with *id* sc. *facit* ('he does'), and cf. on *hoc*, IV, ch. 30, 1. *minus magnos*: 'smaller.' *feri*: 'are caused.' *onera . . . transportandam*: for the agreement see 508. i. *reliquis maribus*: 'in other waters,' meaning the Mediterranean, the various parts of which were given separate names by the Romans.

3. *actuarias*: pred. adj.; *naves actuariae* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. *feri*: for the infin. pass. with *impero* see 518. v. *quam ad rem*: 'to which end.'

4. *Ea quae sunt*: 'what is.' *Hispania*: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. *Ipse*: in contrast with the *legati* of section 1, who were left to carry out his orders. *conventibus*: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. *Illyricum*: another of Caesar's three provinces. *finitimam*: i.e., to the *Pirustae*. *audiebat*: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

7. *nihil*: 'none,' lit. ? *publico consilio*: 'with the sanction of the community (or state)'; as opposed to the work of irresponsible

individuals. *demonstrant*: co-ordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. *omnibus rationibus*: 'in every way.' *de*: 'for'

8. *ad*: 'by.' *diem*: for the gender see on IV, ch. 36, 2. *fecerint*: 'they do.' For the perf. subj. representing the fut. perf. indic. in primary sequence, see 687. *b*.

9. *ad diem*: 'at the (appointed) day.' *dat*: 'he appoints.' *aestiment*: 'assess.'

CHAP. 2.

2. *circuitis* . . . *invenit*: 'he visits . . . and finds.' *studio*: with *instructas*. *in summa inopia*: '(although) amidst,' or freely 'in spite of,' or 'although there was,' etc. *cujus*: sc. *generis naves*; trans. freely 'which,' as though it were *quod*, the object of *demonstravimus*. *longas*: sc. *naves*. *neque multum*, etc.: 'and that they are also ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this but that,' etc. (630. i. *d*). *diebus*: see 621.

3. *Collaudatis*: more emphatic than *laudatis*. (49, N. B.) *negotio*: see 577. *quid fieri velit*: cf. on IV, ch. 23, 5. *omnes*: sc. *naves*. *portum Itium*: the exact locality is unknown. *milium*: see 383. *b*; modifying *trajectum*. *huic rei*: 'for this purpose,' i.e., for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. *satis militum*: 'an adequate force,' lit. ? (586. iii).

4. *concilia*: Caesar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. *veniebant*, *parebant*: trans. by 'would not' (678. *b*).

CHAP. 3.

1. *plurimum*: adverb. *equitatu*: see 414. *supra*. Book III speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he here dwells on their position.

2. *duo*: 'two (rivals).' *inter se*: 'with each other' (662. ii).

3. *alter*: here 'the latter,' lit. 'the one.' *cognitum est*: see 556. *se* . . . *futuros*: with *confirmavit*. *in officio*: 'true to their allegiance,' lit. ? *populi*: objective gen. (586. ii); trans. by 'with,' not 'of.'

4. *cogere*: depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*is*)*que* with *parare*. *per*: 'by reason of.' in *armis esse*: 'be under arms,' or 'bear arms.' *ingenti magnitudine*: see 383; modifying *quas* with the force of an appositive adj.; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. *medios*: see 175.

5. *Cingetorigis*: cf. on *populi*, section 3. *de suis privatim rebus petere*: 'to make requests on their own behalf,' lit. ? *privatim*: the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. *civitati*: see 578; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. *non possent*: 'they felt unable'; for the mood see 640. i. *ne*: 'lest' or 'that'; for the subjunctive see 621.

6. *sese noluisse*: sc. 'saying' or 'to say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (691); *sese* refers to the subject of *mittit*. *idcirco*: explained by *quo . . . laberetur*. *quo . . . contineret*: see 525. b. *ne . . . laberetur*: 'lest . . . should' (386). *discessu*: abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. *permitteret*: see 688. *in castra*: see 618. vii. *suas, civitatis*: both modifying *fortunas*.

CHAP. 4.

1. *qua de causa*: 'why.' *instituto*: 'original,' lit. ? *omnibus . . . comparatis*: modifying the preceding words.

2. *in*: 'among.' *filio*: in apposition with *his*. *evocaverat*: sc. *Caesar*. *consolatus*: sc. *est*; because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. *nihilo*: see 598. *principibus, hos*: the same persons; see 550. ii. fn. *quod*: conjunction. *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.' *merito . . . fieri*: 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' for *a se fieri* = *se facere*, see 556. *merito*: see 415. *magni interesse*: see 554. b. ii; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. *cujus . . . perspexisset*: 'seeing that he had observed his,' etc.; or trans. *ejus cujus* 'of a man whose'; for the mood see 665. *suos*: referring to *ejus* (657. i). *tam*: omit in trans.

4. *factum*: noun. *suam . . . minui*: in apposition with *id factum*; 'that . . . should be lessened.' *qui fuisset*: 'whereas (or

while) he had been' (665). *inimico animo*: 'ill-disposed' (383). *hoc dolore*: 'at this grievance' (595); more lit. 'through indignation at this.'

CHAP. 5.

2. *factae erant, erant profectae*: for the mood see 670. i. *eodem*: adverb. *omnibus rebus*: 'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. *numero*: modifying *milium*; for the abl. see 414. *milium*: modifying *equitatus* (383); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. *obsidum loco*: 'as hostages,' lit. ? (618. v). *cum abesset*: 'while he was absent,' or 'during his absence,' for the fut. ind. of the actual thought (687. b; 676. b).

CHAP. 6.

1. *ante . . . dictum est*: 'we have spoken before.' Book I tells how four years before Dumnorix had stirred up hostility to Caesar among the Aedui. Caesar had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. *eum*: sc. *esse*. *animi*: 'pride' or 'ambition'; for the case see 383.

2. *Accedebat huc quod*: 'besides this' or 'in addition'; more lit. 'to this was added the fact that' (640. vii). *deferri*: notice the tense (327). *quod dictum*: 'a statement which.' *neque*: 'but yet . . . not.'

3. *factum*: sc. *esse*, or as in ch. 4, 4. *Ille*: 'Dumnorix.' *omnibus*: 'all manner of.' *petere contendit*: 'sought earnestly,' lit. ? *quod . . . timeret*: 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for the mood see 640. *navigandi*: see 589. *diceret*: for the mood see 672. i.

4. *id*: the request to be left behind. *sibi*: 'him'; indirect object.

5. *terrare*: 'he kept alarming'; historical infin. (604); for the form see 758. ii. *feri, esse*: in trans. supply 'saying' from *terrare* (691). *ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret*: see 694 and fn. *nobilitate*: see 437. *quos*: trans. after its antecedent *hos* (504. a). *vereretur*: see 670. *ut . . . traductos necaret*: 'to take over . . . and murder' (542. i. c; 550. ii).

6. *reliquis*: i.e., the other *principes* than himself. *interponere*, *poscere*: cf. on *territare*, section 5. *quod*: 'whatever.' *intellexissent*: for the mood and tense cf. on *adisset*, IV, ch. 20, 2. *ut . . . administrarent*: giving the contents of the oath (522. c). *communi consilio*: 'by concerted action,' or more freely 'unite in carrying out,' etc. *deferebantur*: not once only, hence imperf.

CHAP. 7.

1. *tantum dignitatis tribuebat*: 'had such respect,' lit? (586. iii). *coercendum*: sc. *esse*. *quibuscumque . . . posset*: 'by whatever means he could'; for the mood see 670.

2. *longius*: 'still farther,' i.e., than at present. *prospiciendum*: sc. *esse statuebat* (556). *quid nocere*: 'to do any harm'; for the acc. see 571. i. *sibi*: i.e., Caesar. *ne quid . . . posset*: see 525. a.

3. *commoratus*: 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see 540. fn. *omnis*: omit in trans. *ut . . . contineret*: see 522. c: so *cognosceret*.

4. *milites*: the infantry, belonging to the Roman legions, as opposed to the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries.

5. *impeditis*: 'while . . . were occupied.' *iniciente Caesare*: 'without Caesar's knowledge' (548). *domum*: 'for home' (618).

6. *omnibus rebus*: 'everything(else).' *retrahi*: cf. on *feri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. *vim faciat*: 'offers violence' or 'makes resistance'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (687. b). *se absente*: 'in his (i.e., Caesar's) absence.' *qui . . . neglexisset*: 'seeing that he,' etc.; for the mood cf. on *percepisset*, ch. 4, 3. *praesentis*: 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.' *imperium*: 'authority.'

8. *enim*: 'in fact.' Another reading is *autem*. *clamitans*: see 758. ii. *liberum, liberae civitatis*: both predicates of *se esse*; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (174).

9. *erat imperatum*: see 557. *hominem*: 'the fellow.'

CHAP. 8.

1. *continente*: elsewhere in Caesar *continenti* with the regular abl. ending of an I-stem. *pro tempore et pro re*: 'as time and circumstances might suggest,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. *pari quem*: 'the same as' (668). *ad*: 'about.' *provectus*, etc.: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. *longius*: 'too far' (593. iii). *orta luce*: 'at sunrise,' lit.? (550. i). *sub sinistra*: 'on the left'; the current had carried the vessels out of the Channel into the North Sea. *relictam*: 'behind him.'

3. *qua*: 'where'; adv. See IV, ch. 23, 6. *egressum*: a noun.

4. *admodum laudanda*: 'deserving of great praise' or 'most praiseworthy'; (450. b). *vectoriis* . . . *navigiis*: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' *non intermisso*: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause co-ordinate with *ailae-quarunt*, for which see 755. i. a.

5. *Accessum est navibus*: 'the ships reached,' lit.? (556); *navibus* is abl. of means. *neque hostis*: 'but no enemy.'

6. *cum*: 'although' (563. a). *quae cum annotinis*, etc.; 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see 586. vi. a. *quisque*: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. *sui commodi*: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (586. i). here expressing purpose. Some editions read *sui commodi causa*. *amplius octingentae*; for the case see 593. ii.

CHAP. 9.

1. *castris*: for the dat. see 404. *ad*: 'by' or 'near.' *qui* . . . *essent*: 'to protect the ships,' lit.? (431 and 388). *de tertia vigilia*: 'early in the third watch'; *de* suggests that a portion of the watch had passed. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. *eo minus*: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. *navibus*: see 578. *relinquebat*: notice the tense. *et*: omit in trans.; another reading is *ei*.

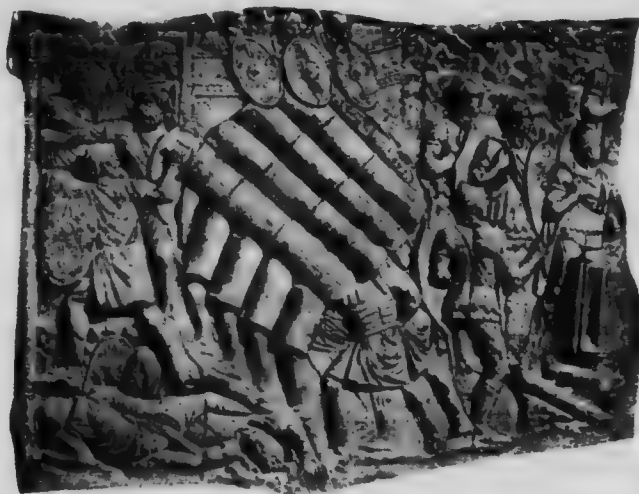
3. *equitatu*: see 596. iii. *ex loco superiore*: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. *nostros prohibere*: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. *egregie munitum*: 'well protected.' *opere*: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. *ut videbantur*: 'as it seemed,' or 'apparently,' lit.? (514. vii). *causa*: 'with a view to.'

6. *ingredi prohibebant*: cf. on IV, ch. 24, 1.

7. *testudine*: a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' *aggere*: this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. *ad*: 'against' or 'close to.' *paucis*: as in IV, ch. 37, 3.

8. *eos*: i.e., *militēs*, subject of *prosequi*. *fugientes*: object of *prosequi*; see 544. *a. longius*; cf. on ch. 8, 2, or on IV, ch. 26, 5. *munitioni*: see 404.



Testudo (From Trajan's Column).

CHAP. 10.

1. *postridie ejus diei mane*: 'on the very next morning,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day in the morning.' *in*: 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' *expeditionem*: strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. *aliquantum itineris*: 'some distance,' or 'a considerable distance'; lit? (586. iii). *extremi*: 'only the last (or rearguard),' i.e., of the troops sent out. *in litore*: another reading is in

litus (618. vi). *neque subsisterent*: 'would (or did) not hold'; for the mood see 670; for the tense see 678. *h*.

3. *eo concursu*: 'owing to the vessels thus colliding' or more lit. 'from the colliding thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

CHAP. 11

1. *revocari*: i.e., from pursuing the enemy. *resistere*: here meaning 'to halt.' Another reading is *itinere desistere* (437).

2. *eadem fere quae*: 'much the same state of affairs as' (668). *sic*: 'to this extent,' or 'with this qualification,' here in a limiting sense, restricting the force of the previous words *eadem* . . . *perespicit*, and explained by the following *ut* clause (529. v). *amissis*, etc.: with concessive force; trans. by 'while.' *reliquae posse viderentur*: 'the rest, it seemed, could,' lit. ? (514. vii).

4. *scribit ut instituat*: see 528. ii. *quam plurimas posset*: cf. on ch. 1, i. *iis legionibus*: 'with the aid of,' etc. (596. i). *posset*, *sunt*: for the moods see 670. i. For the change of tense see 687. *b*. ii.

5. *multae*: for the agreement see 508. i. *operae ac laboris*: trans. by 'involving'; see 588. viii. *commodissimum*: 'the best plan.' *naves subduci*: see 124 or trans. by changing the voice.

6. *ne nocturnis*, etc. . freely 'without suspending the soldiers' work even at night,' lit. ? *ad*: lit. 'with respect to.'

7. *quas ante*: sc. *reliquerat*.

8. *summa imperii*, etc.: 'the chief command and direction of the campaign,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the directing of the war.' *summa*: a noun, abl. absol. *communi consilio*: 'by common consent.' *dividit*: trans. by changing the voice. *a mari*: i.e., from the south shore where Caesar had landed.

9. *Huic cum*, etc.: 'between this man and the other states . . . there had been (or had arisen)': for the dat. see 577, as also for *bello imperioque*.

CHAP. 12.

1. *quos* . . . *dicunt*: *quos* is subject of *natos* (*esse*); *proditum* (*esse*) depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos* (c. v). Trans. 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' or more freely 'who, according to their own

tradition, were born.' Another reading is *ipsa*, with *insula*.
memoria: abl. of means.

2. *pars*: sc. *incolitur*. *qui omnes*: 'all of whom' (586. vi. a).
iis: 'the.' *quibus* . . . *pervenerunt*: freely 'from which they
 have sprung and have come there.' *civitatibus*: see 666. c.

3. *aedificia*: sc. *sunt*. *consimilia*: appositive, not predicative.
Gallicis: sc. *aedificiis*; 'those of the Gauls.'

4. *aut* . . . *aut*: 'partly . . . partly.' *ad* . . . *examinatis*: 'of
 a fixed weight,' lit.? *pro*: 'as.'

5. *mediterraneis*: the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to,
 Caesar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an
 inland district. *maritimis*: iron was once mined in the south of
 England, now chiefly in the north. *ejus*: i.e., iron, which, being
 a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native
 tribes, even where it is abundant. *importato*: in emphatic posi-
 tion, 'the bronze they use is imported' (502. a). *cujusque*:
 'every,' lit.? *praeter*, etc.: an error on Caesar's part.

6. *fas*: sc. *esse*. *haec*: neut. plur. referring to the animals
 just mentioned. *animi*: 'amusement,' lit. 'the feelings.' *Loca*:
 'the climate,' lit. 'the country.' *remissioribus*: 'less severe'
 (261. d); for the case see 548.

CHAP. 13.

1. *natura*: 'in shape' (414). *triquetra*: sc. *est*. *cujus*: 'of it.'
alter: 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. *ad*: 'at.' *quo*: adverb.
appelluntur: 'put in.'

2. *alterum*: sc. *latus*; 'the second side.' *ad Hispaniam*: as
 the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of
 land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant
 places. *qua ex parte*: see 618. viii. *dimidio minor*: 'half as
 large,' lit.? (598). *pari spatio*, etc.: freely 'at the same distance
 as the passage from Gaul to Great Britain'; lit. 'of the same
 length of passage across as is (the passage across) from Gaul to
 Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see 353 with *est* sc. *transmissus*;
 for *atque* see 668.

3. *hoc medio cursu* : 'the middle of this passage,' i.e., to Ireland (175). *Mona* : this name was afterwards given to Anglesea, but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. *subjectae* : sc. *esse*. *insulae* : the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. *nonnulli* : though Caesar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. *sub* : 'at the time of.' *bruma* : for *brevima* = *brevissima*, sc. *dies*. *esse* : the subject is *noct. m.*

4. *Nos* : contrasted with *nonnulli*. For the plural see 666. ii; cf. the use of *demonstravimus* in ch. 2, 2 and ch. 3, 1. *reperiebamus* : trans. by 'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Caesar's stay. *nisi* : 'except that.' *certis mensuris* : 'by exact measurements.' *ex aqua* : 'by water,' i.e., with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. *ut . . . opinio* : 'as their belief goes'; freely 'as they believe.' *illorum* : referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. *miliū* : sc. *passuum*; for the case see 586. viii.

6. *Tertium* : sc. *latus*. *angulus* : the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. *maxime* : 'on the whole.' *milia* : see 231; another reading is *miliū*, as in section 5. *in* : 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. *viciis centum* : 'two thousand' (727. d). *miliū* : for the case cf. on section 5.

CHAP. 14.

1. *qui* : see 666. a. *quae regio* : see 666. b. ii. *omnis* : 'entirely.'

2. *Interiores plerique* : 'most of those in the interior'; *plerique*, an adj. modifying *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. *lacte, pellibus* : see 145. *sunt vestiti* : see 666. iv, and 680. c. *hoc* : 'thus,' lit. ? *aspectu* : see 414.

3. *Sunt* : freely 'they have.' *capillo, parte*; see 383. *rasa* : trans. freely by the active voice.

4. *Uxores communes* : acc. Caesar is probably in error on this point. *deni duodenique* : 'groups of ten or twelve.' For *-que*, lit. 'and (in other cases),' cf. in English 'three and four times a day.' *inter se* : omit in trans.

5. *si qui* : sc. *liberi*; 'if any' (457). *habentur* : 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (509. c). *quo* : adv. = *ad quos*; 'to whom.'

CHAP. 15.

1. *tamen ut* : 'yet so that.' *omnibus partibus* : 'everywhere,' 'at all points.' *fuerint, compulerint* : for the tense see 529. ii.
2. *compluribus* : i.e., of the Britons. *cupidius* : see 593. iii.
3. *illi* : see 653. vii. *spatio* : i.e., of time; cf. section 4. *castrorum* : a camp was made at the end of each day's march.
4. *missis* : trans. by 'when.' *subsidio* : 'to their aid' (431). *atque his* : 'and these too.' *primis* : apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. *cum* : 'although.' *intermisso loci spatio* : 'with or (more lit.) leaving an interval.' *inter se* : with *intermisso*. *perterritis* : trans. by 'as.' *per medios* : 'between them,' i.e., through the *perexiguum spatium*. *seque . . . receperunt* : not meaning that 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that 'they got back again' to their original position.

CHAP. 16.

1. *dimicaretur* : see 556. *nostros* : the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse*. *cedentes* : acc.; 'the retreating enemy' (544. a). *possent* : see 670. *ab signis discedere* : they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. *minus* : 'not well' or 'ill.' *ad* : 'to face.'
2. *autem* : 'while.' *proelio* : see 145. *illi* : 'the enemy.' *cederent* : see 670. *cum* : 'whenever.' *removissent* : for the mood and tense see 642 and 687. b. *nostros* : here = *equites*.
3. *Equestris* : with *proelii*. *autem* : 'moreover.' *ratio* : 'regular method,' or 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in the last line of section 2. *cedentibus, insequentibus* : either dat. of the participle, referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood. In either case Caesar is thinking of the danger to his own native cavalry, due to the superiority of the British horsemen. *par atque idem* : 'exactly the same'; emphasis is secured by repetition; cf. ch. 22. 5. *inferebat* : 'brought' or 'involved' (678. b).
4. *Accedebat hinc ut . . . proeliarentur* : cf. on ch. 6, 2; see 528. b and 698. d. *intervallis* : see 596. iii. *stationes* : 'reserves or supports.' *alios alii* : 'one another' (662. ii). *exciperent* : 'relieved.' -que : 'and thus.'

CHAP. 17.

1. *rari*: 'here and there' (703. *d*). *lenius*: 'with less vigor.'
2. *tres*: an unusually large force; cf. IV, ch. 32, 1. *cum*: 'under.' *sic uti . . . abasterent*: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit.? They did not hesitate to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers. *signa*, as in ch. 16, 1, represents the regular formation of the legionary soldiers.
3. *subsidio*: for abl. (= 'in') with *confusi* see 600. *a*. *praecipites*: predicate acc. *egerunt*: see 640. *a*.
4. *sui colligendi*: see 611. *iv*.
5. *Ex*: 'after.' *quae . . . auxilia*: the *maiores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. *discesserunt*: 'disbanded.' *summis copiis*: 'with their full force,' or 'in full force' (596. *iii*).

CHAP. 18.

1. *consilio*: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. *Tamesim*: for the acc. in *-im*, see 718. *i*. in *fines*: see 618. *vii*. *hoc*: here, 'at this'; sc. *loco*.
2. *animum advertit*: also written *animadvertit*. *ad*: 'on.'
3. *praeifixis*: driven into the face of the bank. *defixae*: driven into the bed of the river.
5. *ea, eo*: 'such' (653. *ii*). *cum . . . exstarent*: 'although they had only their heads above the water,' lit.? (598). *-que*: 'but.'

CHAP. 19.

1. *ut demonstravimus*: with *deposita spe*. *supra*: ch. 17, 5. *amplioribus copiis*: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit.? *relictis*: trans. freely by 'kept.' *servabat*: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see 678. *b*. *quibus*: 'where,' or 'through which.'
2. *cum*: 'whenever.' *ejecerat*: for the mood and tense see 642. *liberius*: with *ejecerat*: for the meaning see 593. *iii*; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. *viis*: see 596. *ii*. *periculo equitum*: 'danger to cavalry'; for the gen. see 586. *ii*. *hoc metu*: 'through fear of this' or 'by the fear thus inspired,' lit.? Cf. *hoc de re*, ch. 4, 4.
3. *Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur*: 'the only course left Caesar was to forbid his men to leave,' etc. For *ut pateretur* as subject



clause see 694; for *discedi* see 556. *tantum noceretur*: freely 'to do as much harm' (571. i; 557). *in*: 'in the way of,' freely 'by.' *labore atque itinere*: 'by laborious marching' (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids. The whole clause may be rendered freely 'as the legionaries' powers of enduring hard marching would allow.'

CHAP. 20.

1. *Trinobantes*: with *mittunt*, section 2. *ex qua . . . vitarat*: this parenthesis may be translated after *legatos . . . mittunt*, section 2, and broken at *cujus pater*, thus: 'The Trinobantes sent, etc.; from this state, etc.; his father, etc.; they promise, etc.' *fidem secutus*: 'attaching himself to' or 'seeking the protection of,' lit.? cf. IV, ch. 21, 8. *continentem Galliam*: 'the mainland of Gaul' (588). *obtinuerat*: avoid 'obtain' (706. c). *ipse*: 'while he himself,' or 'but who himself' (664. i).

2. *sese dedituros*: sc. *se* as subject, *sese* being object (514. x).

3. *Cassivellauni*: 'on the part of C.' or 'at the hands of C.' (429. c). *mittat qui praesit*: 'to send (some one) to govern' (666. a).

4. *exercitui*: see 578. *ad numerum*: 'to the required number.' Note the asyndeton in the last sentence (as also with *ipse* in section 1). Note, too, *his*, *eos* and *illi* used of the same persons.

CHAP. 21.

1. *defensis*: i.e., against Cassivellaunus. *militum*: cf. on *Cassivellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. *his*: sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. *quo*: adverb. *satis magnus*: 'a considerable.' *convenerit*: for the mood and tense see 670; 687. b.

3. *autem*: 'now.' *oppidum vocant*: 'call it a town'; the object of *vocant* is found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other hand, dwelt in regular towns. *silvas impeditas*: 'a piece of woods difficult of access.' *munierunt*: see 642.

4. *opere*: cf. on ch. 9, 4. *ex*: 'on' (618. viii). *hunc*: 'it'; lit. 'this (place).'

5. *morati*: 'after holding out.' *non tulerunt*: 'could not withstand.'

6. *reperitus*: *sc. est.* *multi*: 'many (of the enemy).' in *fuga*: 'while trying to escape.'

CHAP. 22.

1. *quibus regionibus praeerant*: 'and over which . . . ruled' (577). *his*: *i.e.*, the kings. *navalia castra*: *see ch. 11, 5.*

2. *incolumes*: *acc.* with *suos*; *sui* is here identical with *nostri*.

3. *per*: 'through the mediation of' (596. i). *de*: 'to offer.'

4. *neque multum*: 'and little.' *id* = *non multum aestatis*, 'that little.' in *annos singulos*: 'yearly,' *lit.* 'for the years one by one.' *vectigalis*: *see 586. iii.* *penderet*: 'should pay'; for the mood and tense *see 625. c.* and *687. b.*

5. *interdicit atque imperat*: *emphatic repetition* (*cf. on ch. 16, 3*); 'he strictly forbids . . . to harm,' or 'he expressly orders . . . not to harm.' *neu*: 'or,' *lit. ?* (526. i.)

CHAP. 23.

3. *tanto numero*: *see IV, ch. 22, 3 and 4, and V, ch. 2, 2, and ch. 8, 6.* *tot navigationibus*: 'although there were (or in spite of) so many passages' (548). *portaret*: 'had on board'; the subjunctive may be by attraction (673) (*so remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curaverat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or it may perhaps be characteristic (530).

4. *et . . . et*: dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply; *trans.* 'both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,' etc. *prioris commeatus*: *sc. ex navibus* (383). *postea*: *i.e.*, after Caesar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. *faciendas curaverat*: *cf. on ch. 1, 1.* *numero*: for the *abl.* *see 414.* *sexaginta*: *acc.* agreeing with *quas*. *locum caperent*: 'reached their destination,' *i.e.*, Britain. *caperent rejicerentur*: with *sic accidit uti* (371).

5. *quod*: 'for.' *necessario collocavit*: *cf. on IV, ch. 28, 3.* *angustius*: *trans.* by 'rather' or 'somewhat' (593. iii).

6. *summa*: here *trans.* 'dead.' *consecuta*: *see 550. i.* *cum solvisset*: freely 'he set sail . . . and.' *inita vigilia*: 'at the beginning of the watch,' *abl. absol.*



Transport Ship.

INDEX OF POINTS OF SYNTAX AND ACCIDENCE IN CAESAR, B. G. IV. 20—V. 23.

A. CASE CONSTRUCTIONS.

- Nominative:** in apposition, iv. 22, 1.—in predicate, iv. 32, 1; v. 9, 6; 11, 8; 13, 3; 14, 5; 16, 4; 17, 1.—of personal pronoun, iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4; and *ille* or *illi* often.
- Genitive:** (a) *possessive*; in predicate, v. 8, 6.—with *postridiē*, v. 10, 1; with *causā*, v. 9, 4; 12, 6, and often with gerund or gerundive.
- (b) *subjective*; iv. 27, 3; 33, 1; 34, 1; 35, 2; v. 2, 2; 3, 6; 8, 2; 8, 3; 10, 3; 11, 6; 22, 3.
- (c) *objective*; iv. 20, 4; 22, 2; 28, 2; 29, 3; 31, 1; 32, 1; 37, 1; v. 3, 3; 3, 5; 6, 4; 9, 8; 19, 1; 19, 2.—with adjectives; iv. 22, 1; 24, 4; v. 6, 1; 6, 3.
- (d) *partitive*; with neuters, iv. 21, 9; 22, 3; 32, 2; v. 1, 7; 2, 3; 7, 1; 10, 2; 22, 4 (twice).—with *millia*, iv. 37, 2 and often *passuum*, as v. 2, 3; 13, 7.—with superlatives; v. 3, 1; 15, 4; 20, 1.—in predicate; v. 7, 8.

- (e) *quality*; iv. 22, 1; 38, 5; v. 2, 2; 2, 3; 5, 3; 12, 5; 16, 1; 18, 3; 23, 4.—in predicate; v. 6, 1; 11, 5; 13, 5; 13, 7.

- (f) *price*; iv. 21, 7; v. 4, 3.

Dative: (a) *indirect object*; iv. 22, 1; v. 6, 4; 18, 5; and often.—with adjectives; iv. 20, 2; 21, 7; 29, 1; v. 9, 1 (?); 12, 3.—with special intransitive verbs, iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; 27, 5; v. 1, 1; 2, 4; 7, 2; 19, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (twice). [*Imperō* with dat. and acc., iv. 22, 2; v. 1, 6; 20, 4].—with compound verbs; iv. 25, 6; 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 2, 3; 11, 9; 16, 4; 22, 1; and combined with acc., v. 1, 1; 9, 1; 11, 9.

- (b) *interest*; iv. 25, 3; 26, 4; 36, 2; v. 3, 5; 9, 1; 20, 4.

- (c) *purpose*; iv. 29, 4; 31, 2; v. 1, 4; 2, 3; 9, 1 (?); 9, 8; 15, 4.

- (d) *interest and purpose (double dative)*; iv. 20, 2; 25, 1; 37, 2; v. 9, 1; 11, 7.

- (e) *possession (with dēsum)*, iv. 26, 5; 30, 1.

- (f) *apparent agent*; iv. 24, 2.

Accusative: (a) *predicate acc.*; iv. 21, 7; 23, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 2; 1, 3; 16, 4; 17, 3; 21, 3; 22, 2; 23, 1; 23, 6.

- (b) *limit of motion*; iv. 21, 6; v. 7, 5.

- (c) *extent of space*; iv. 23, 6; v. 9, 2; 10, 2; 11, 8; 13, 1; 13, 6.

- (d) *duration of time*; iv. 34, 4; v. 7, 3 (twice); 13, 3.

- (e) *adverbial*; v. 1, 3; 2, 2; 3, 1; 7, 2; 14, 1; 19, 3.

- (f) *with propius*; iv. 28, 2.

Ablative: (a) *separation*; iv. 21, 9; 24, 1; 30, 2 (twice); 34, 5; v. 6, 5; 11, 1 (?).

- (b) *cause*; iv. 34, 1; v. 4, 4.

- (c) *comparison*; iv. 37, 3 (?).

- (d) *means or instrument*; iv. 22, 4; 24, 2; 25, 1; 25, 2; 26, 4; 27, 1; 28, 3; 29, 2; 29, 4; 31, 3; 32, 5; 33, 3; 35, 1; 35, 3; 37, 1; v. 1, 5; 1, 8; 5, 2; 6, 3; 6, 5; 7, 1; 8, 4; 8, 5; 9, 4; 11, 4; 12, 1; 13, 4; 14, 2; 15, 1; 16, 2; 17, 1; 18, 5; 19, 1; 19, 2 (twice); and often.—with *iter* often; in iv. 38, 2, with double abl.

- (e) *measure of difference*; iv. 22, 4; v. 13, 2; so *multō*, v. 4, 4; *nihilō*, v. 4, 3; 7, 3; and *paulō*, iv. 23, 2, and often. *Hōc* or *eō* with comparatives, iv. 30, 1; v. 1, 2; 9, 1; 14, 2.
- (f) *specification*; v. 3, 1; 5, 3; 13, 1; 14, 2; 23, 4.
- (g) *manner and attendant circumstances*; iv. 25, 4; 27, 3; 28, 1; 31, 3; 33, 1; v. 1, 7; 2, 2; 11, 2; 16, 2; 16, 4; 18, 1; 18, 5; 23, 2; of accordance; v. 1, 7; 4, 3; 6, 6; 11, 8.
- (h) *accompaniment*; iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 3; 17, 5.
- (i) *quality*; v. 3, 4; 4, 4; 13, 2; 14, 3.
- (j) *place where*; iv. 34, 2; v. 5, 4; 15, 1; 18, 1; 19, 1; with *cōfidō*, v. 17, 3.
- (k) *time when*; iv. 20, 1; 34, 1; v. 3, 6; 23, 6; and often with words expressing time; (but not *cōsulibus*, v. 1, 1; *lūce*, v. 8, 2; *vigiliā*, v. 23, 6).
- (l) *time within which*; iv. 27, 6; 37, 3(?); v. 2, 2.
- (m) *absolute*; concessive (= *although*); iv. 20, 4; 31, 3; 34, 2; v. 11, 2; 23, 3.—conditional (= *if*); iv. 30, 2.—with pres. partic.; iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 7; 16, 3(?).—with deponent perf. partic.; iv. 26, 5; v. 8, 2; 10, 2 (twice); 23, 6.—with noun or adj. as predicate; iv. 20, 1; 23, 6; 24, 2; 24, 3; 28, 3; 32, 5; 36, 2 (twice); v. 1, 1; 7, 5; 12, 6; 15, 3; 23, 3.—with negative; v. 8, 4; 11, 3.—referring to object in acc.; iv. 21, 6; v. 4, 3.—with subject omitted; v. 16, 3(?).

B. MODAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

- (a) **Final or purpose clauses**: *adverbial*; with *ut* or *nē*; v. 3, 6; 4, 1; 8, 1; 10, 1; 23, 5; with *quō*; v. 3, 6.—*relative*; iv. 21, 5; 22, 1; v. 1, 7; 1, 9; 9, 1; 10, 2; 20, 3.—*substantival*; iv. 21, 2; 21, 6; 21, 8; 25, 3; 25, 5; 27, 4; v. 1, 1; 4, 2; 6, 3; 6, 4; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 2; 7, 3; 8, 3; 11, 4; 20, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (with *neu*); with *ut* omitted; iv. 21, 8; 23, 5.—with *vereor*; v. 3, 5.—with *quōminus*, iv. 22, 4.—with *quin*, v. 2, 2.
- (b) **Consecutive or result clauses**: *adverbial*; iv. 23, 3; 28, 2; 33, 2; 33, 3; v. 11, 2 (restrictive); 15, 1; 17, 2; 18, 5.—*substantival*; iv. 29, 1; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 6, 5; 16, 4; 19, 3; 23, 3 and 4.

- (c) **Relative clauses of characteristic**; iv. 21, 9; 29, 4; 34, 4; 38, 2; v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).
- (d) **Indirect questions**; iv. 20, 4; 21, 9; 23, 5; 34, 5; v. 2, 3; 3, 3; 4, 1; 8, 1; 9, 1.—**deliberative**; v. 22, 4.
- (e) **Relative clauses** [see also under a, c, g, i.].—often with **qui** or **ut** (=as) and the indic.—in indirect discourse in subj.; iv. 21, 8; 22, 1; 23, 5; 27, 1; 32, 1 (twice); v. 1, 1; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 1; 11, 4; 21, 2.—in subj. by attraction, v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).—in indic., though with indirect discourse; iv. 30, 1; 31, 1; 31, 2; 32, 2 (twice); 35, 1; v. 5, 2 (twice); 11, 4.—with **quicumque**, iv. 26, 1 (indic.); v. 7, 1 (subj. in indirect discourse).
- (f) **Temporal clauses**: **ubi** and indic.; iv. 25, 1; 26, 2 (frequentative); v. 9, 1.—**simul** (**atque**) and indic.; iv. 26, 5; 27, 1; v. 3, 3.—**posteaquam** and indic.; iv. 37, 4; v. 3, 5; 6, 4.—**postquam** and indic.; iv. 28, 1.—**dum** (=while) and indic.; iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.—**dum** (=until) and subj.; iv. 23, 4.—**quoad** and indic.; v. 17, 3.—**praequam** and subj.; iv. 21, 1.—**cum**, frequentative and indic.; iv. 33, 1; v. 19, 2; 21, 3; with subj. in indirect discourse; v. 16, 2.—**cum** and subj.; iv. 25, 4; 25, 6; 26, 4; 28, 2; 32, 3; 37, 1; 37, 2; v. 1, 6; 2, 2; 10, 2; 16, 1; 17, 2; 18, 2; 22, 2; 23, 5; 23, 6; in v. 5, 4, in indirect discourse for the fut. indic.
- (g) **Causal clauses**: often with **quod** and indic.—with **quod** and subj. in indirect discourse; iv. 22, 1; 27, 5; v. 6, 3 (twice, *diceret* exceptional); 10, 2; 16, 1; 16, 2.—with **quoniam** and subj., in virtual indirect discourse; v. 3, 5.—with **cum** and subj.; iv. 23, 2; 28, 3; 29, 3; 30, 1; 31, 3; 32, 1; 38, 2; v. 17, 3; 22, 4.—with **qui** and subj.; iv. 23, 5; v. 4, 3; 7, 7.—with **quod**=*the fact that*; v. 6, 2.
- (h) **Conditional clauses**: in direct discourse; iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4.—in indirect discourse; iv. 20, 2 (twice); 33, 2 (perhaps attraction); 34, 5; 35, 1; 37, 1; v. 1, 8; 3, 7; 7, 7.
- (i) **Concessive or adversative clauses**: with **etsi** and indic.; iv. 20, 1; 31, 1; 35, 1; v. 4, 1; 11, 5.—with **cum** and subj.; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 5; v. 8, 6; 15, 4; 18, 5.—with **qui** and subj.; v. 4, 4.
- (j) **Infinitive**: *complementary*; with **polliceor**, iv. 21, 5; with **imperō**, v. 1, 3; 7, 6.—with **prohibeō**, iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6; 19, 2.—with **vereor**, v. 6, 5.

- in indirect discourse* : introduced informally, v. 3, 6 ; 6, 5.—with subj. acc. omitted, iv. 27, 1 ; 27, 5 ; v. 20, 2.—with **statuō**, v. 7, 1 ; 11, 5.—*substantial* ; iv. 30, 2 ; v. 4, 3 ; 4, 4 ; 11, 5 ; 12, 6.—*historical* ; v. 6, 5 ; 6, 6.
- (k) **Gerund** : *genitive* ; with **causā**, v. 6, 2 ; 17, 2 ; 19, 2 ; with other nouns, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 1, 2 ; 6, 4 ; 8, 4 ; 17, 3 ; 17, 4 ; with adjective, v. 6, 3.—*accusative* ; with **ad**, iv. 23, 1 ; 23, 4 ; 29, 3 ; v. 5, 2.—*ablative* ; with **in**, iv. 32, 5.
- (l) **Gerundive** : as mere predicate adj., v. 8, 4.—*passive periphrastic* ; iv. 22, 2 ; 24, 2 ; 36, 2 ; v. 7, 1 ; 7, 2.—*gerundive construction* ; *genitive*, with **causā**, iv. 22, 1 ; 30, 2 ; v. 12, 2 ; 21, 3.—with other nouns, iv. 22, 2 ; 34, 5 ; v. 11, 8.—with **sui**, iv. 34, 5 ; v. 17, 4.—*accusative*, with **ad**, iv. 20, 2 ; 21, 1 ; 22, 3 ; 29, 4 ; 31, 2 ; 34, 2 ; v. 1, 2 ; 1, 4 ; 7, 6.—*ablative*, with **in**, iv. 27, 4 ; v. 19, 3.—*predicatively*, with **cūrō**, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 1, 1 ; 23, 4 ; with **dō**, iv. 22, 5.
- (m) **Supine** : in **-um**, iv. 32, 1 ; in **-ū**, iv. 30, 2.
- (n) **Participles** : used as substantives, iv. 27, 3 ; v. 4, 3 ; 4, 4 ; 6, 3 (?) ; 9, 8 ; 16, 1 ; 16, 3 (?) ; 16, 4 ; 20, 2 ; 20, 4.—used as adj. and compared, v. 12, 6.—as predicative complement, iv. 23, 2 ; 26, 2 ; 26, 4 ; 37, 1 ; v. 2, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 23, 1.—present part., iv. 25, 3 ; 26, 2 ; 26, 4 ; 37, 1 ; v. 1, 1 ; 7, 7 (twice).—perfect partic. with future reference, iv. 27, 6 ; 30, 2 ; v. 6, 5 ; 22, 1.—perfect partic. with force of present, v. 7, 3 ; and often with verbs of *thinking*.

C. USE OF TENSES.

Present : historical present : with primary sequence, iv. 21, 2 ; 21, 5 ; 21, 8 ; and often with secondary sequence, iv. 21, 9 ; v. 1, 1 ; 11, 2 ; 22, 4 ; with shift of sequence, v. 7, 7 ; 11, 4.—present subj., in indirect discourse for fut. indic. ; v. 7, 7.—with **dum** (= *while*) ; iv. 22, 1 ; 32, 1 ; 34, 3 ; v. 22, 1.

Imperfect : as past progressive, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 3, 2.—of repeated or habitual action (or repeated failure), iv. 20, 4 ; 25, 3 ; 26, 1-4 ; 31, 2 ; v. 1, 5 ; 2, 4 ; 6, 6 ; 10, 2 ; 13, 4 ; 16, 2 ; 16, 3 ; 19, 1 ; 19, 2.—inceptive, iv. 31, 2 (*comparābat*).—conative ; iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 6.—with peculiar force, **accēdēbat** and **relinquēbātur**,¹ iv. 22, 4 ; v. 6, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 19, 3.—imperf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. indic. ; iv. 20, 2 ; v. 5, 4.

¹ In view of the literal meaning of these verbs, we should expect the pluperfect.

Perfect: rendered by present (*cōnsuēvi*), iv. 24, 1; 29, 1; 33, 3; v. 1, 2; 7, 3; 21, 3.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 33, 1; v. 14, 5; 21, 3.—perf. subj., in clause of result; v. 15, 1.—perf. subj., in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic.; v. 1, 8.

Pluperfect: rendered by past (*cōnsuēveram*), iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 1.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 26, 1; 26, 4; v. 16, 2; 19, 2.—plupf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic., iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 27, 1; 34, 5; 35, 1; v. 6, 6.—*ūsī fuerant*, iv. 38, 2.—*dispositās habērent*, v. 16, 4.

Future perfect: iv. 25, 3.

D. MISCELLANEOUS.

- impersonal passive; iv. 23, 2; 24, 2; 26, 1; 27, 4; 28, 1 (twice); 29, 4; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 3, 3; 4, 3; 6, 1; 7, 2; 7, 9; 8, 5; 16, 1 (twice); 19, 3 (thrice).
- (b) passive with reflexive force; iv. 32, 2; v. 14, 2.
- (c) *videor* and *dicor* used personally; v. 2, 4; 9, 4; 11, 2.
- (d) *necesse est*, iv. 29, 3; *oportet*, iv. 29, 4; interest, v. 4, 3.
- (e) *quam* with superlative; iv. 21, 2; v. 4, 3; with *possum* added, v. 1, 1; 11, 4.
- (f) comparative with standard of comparison unexpressed; iv. 20, 4; 23, 2; 25, 1; 26, 5; 30, 1; 32, 3; 35, 2; v. 7, 2; 8, 2; 9, 8; 15, 2; 16, 1; 19, 2 (twice); 19, 3; 23, 5.
- (g) *amplius* with *quam* omitted; iv. 37, 3; v. 8, 6.
- (h) distributive numerals; v. 6, 4; 14, 4; 22, 4.—numeral adverb; v. 13, 7.
- (i) relative pronoun and pronominal adjective [see also under Modal Constructions, a, c, e, g, i].
- with coordinating force; iv. 23, 3; 24, 4; and often; in adverbial dependent clause; iv. 23, 2; 25, 1; 28, 2; and often.—with antecedent omitted (= *is quī*); iv. 22, 3; 25, 3; 27, 1; 31, 2; 34, 3; v. 1, 2 (twice); 2, 3; 6, 6; 14, 1; 20, 3.—with antecedent repeated; iv. 32, 1; v. 2, 3; 12, 2; 13, 3.—with antecedent following; iv. 26, 4; 31, 2; v. 6, 5; 17, 5.—with antecedent incorporated into relative clause; iv. 21, 4; 21, 8; 24, 1; 29, 1; 31, 2; v. 6, 2; 14, 1; 22, 1.—*quicumque*, iv. 26, 1; v. 7, 1.—*īdem quī*, iv. 24, 4; 35, 1; 36, 4; v. 11, 2; 11, 7.—*pār quī*, v. 8, 2 [*pār atque*, v. 13, 2].—*tantus quantus*, iv. 35, 3; v. 19, 3; with *tantus* omitted, iv. 21, 9.

- (j) *is* (= *such*): v. 18, 5.—*hōc mētū = hūjus rei metū*; v. 19, 2; similarly 4, 4.
- (k) *ille*, marking change of subject; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 6; 33, 2; 37, 2; v. 6, 3; 7, 8; 7, 9; 9, 3; 15, 3; 15, 5; 16, 2; 20, 4.
- (l) indefinite pronouns and pronominal adjectives: *quis (qui)*; v. 7, 2; 14, 5.—*quisquam*; iv. 20, 3 (twice).—*ūllus*; iv. 29, 2; 32, 1; v. 23, 3.—*nūllus*; iv. 28, 2; v. 13, 6.—*aliquis*; iv. 26, 2; 32, 2.—*nōnnūllī*; v. 3, 5; 13, 3; 15, 2; 23, 2.—*alius*; iv. 26, 3; 29, 4; v. 11, 3; 21, 5; repeated, iv. 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 16, 4.—*alter*; v. 3, 3; 13, 1; 18, 2; (= *the second*) 13, 2.—*cēteri*; v. 6, 1.—*quisque*; v. 8, 6; 12, 5; 14, 5.—*uterque*; iv. 26, 1.
- (m) *inter sē*: (= *one another*); iv. 25, 5; 30, 1; v. 3, 2; 14, 4.
- (n) *post diem quantum quam*; iv. 28, 1.
- (o) *cum . . . tum*; v. 4, 3.
- (p) *nē . . . quidem*; v. 11, 6.
- (q) *inquit*; iv. 25, 3.
- (r) *medius*; iv. 36, 3; v. 3, 4; 8, 2; 13, 3.
- (s) adjective with adverbial force; v. 9, 6; 16, 4; 17, 1.
- (t) plural of abstract nouns; iv. 38, 2; v. 1, 2.
- (u) first plural: *I*; *nōs*, v. 6, 1; 13, 4; cf. also, v. 2, 2; 3, 1; 19, 1; 2, 1.
- (v) concords: apposition; v. 3, 4; 4, 2; 20, 1 (twice).—agreement with nearer noun; iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 2; 11, 5.—sense construction; iv. 36, 4.

E. ACCIDENCE.

- (a) third declension, I-stems; accus. in *-im*, v. 18, 1; abl. in *-ī*, *nāvi*; iv. 21, 9, and often; *continentī*, iv. 31, 2, and often, but *continente*, v. 8, 1.
- (b) *jūsjurandum*; v. 6, 6; *rēs pūblica*, iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 2; *vis, virēs*, iv. 35, 3; v. 7, 7; 10, 2; *fās*, v. 12, 6; *locus, loca*, v. 8, 6, and often.
- (c) *firmiter*; iv. 26, 1.
- (d) *nōbiscum*; v. 17, 5; *sēcum*, iv. 32, 2; 35, 1; v. 5, 4; 6, 1.
- (e) frequentative verbs; iv. 32, 1; v. 6, 4; 7, 8.
- (f) contracted verbal forms; iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 24, 1; 24, 4; 25, 6; 27, 1; 27, 5; 33, 3; v. 1, 1; 8, 4; 21, 3; 23, 5.

VOCABULARY

A

a, **ab**, prep. with **abl.**, (**a** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in.*

ab-dō, ere, -**didi**, -**ditum**, *hide, conceal.*

abi-ēa, -**ētis**, *f., fr.*

ab-jiciō, ere, -**jeci**, -**jectum**, *throw away.*

ab-scidiō, ere, -**scidi**, -**scissum**, *cut, cut away.*

absēns, -**entis**, (pres. part. of **absūm**) *absent.*

ab-sistō, ere, -**steti**, *withdraw, keep away from, hesitate to attack.*

absūm, **abesse**, -**ui**, *be absent, be wanting; be; or, be distant.*

ac (shorter form for **atque**, used only before vowels), *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.*

ac-cedō, ere, -**cessi**, -**cessum**, *approach, draw near, come up; (used as passive of addō) he added.*

ac-cidō, ere, -**cidi**, *be fall, happen.*
cadit.

ac-cipiō, ere, -**cēpi**, -**ceptum**, *receive, admit; suffer, meet with; accept; hear.*

acclivitas, -**tatis**, *f., ascent, slope, steepness.*

accommodō, **Are**, **avi**, **atum**, *fit, fit on, adjust.*

aciēs, **ei**, *f., line of battle.*

acriter, **adv.**, (**acrius**, **acerrime**), *fiercely, hotly, keenly, desperately.*

actuarius, **a**, **um**, *for rowing, swift.*

acutus, **a**, **um**, *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with **acc.**, *to, towards; with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among.*

adaequō, **Are**, **avi**, **atum**, *equal.*

ad-ducō, ere, -**duxi**, -**ductum**, *bring, bring in; draw towards, pull taut; induce, influence, force.*

ademptus, **a**, **um**, *from adime.*

ad-eō, **ire**, -**ii** (-**ivi**), -**itum**, *visit; reach, get at; approach.*

ad-igō, ere, -**egi**, -**actum**, *hurl, hurt.*

ad-imō, ere, -**mi**, -**emptum**, *take away, destroy.*

aditus, **us**, **m.**, *approach, access, means of approach, landing-place.*

ad-jiciō, ere, -**jeci**, -**jectum**, *cast; throw up, pile up.*

ad-juvō, **Are**, -**juvi**, -**jutum**, *assist, help; be of assistance.*

administrō, **Are**, **avi**, **atum**, *carry out, execute, attend to, manage.*

ad-mittō, ere, -**mi**, -**missum**, *allow, incur, suffer.*

admodum, **adv.**, *very, very much, exceedingly.*

ad-orior, **iri**, -**ortus sum**, *attack, assault.*

Aduatui, **orum**, **m.**, *the Aduatuci, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

adulescens, -**entis**, **m.**, *young man; the younger.*

adventus, **us**, **m.**, *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversus, **a**, **um**, *opposite, facing.*

adversus, prep. with **acc.**, *against.*

ad-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum, turn towards; *animum ad-verte*, observe, notice.
 ad-velō, āre, āvi, ātum, fly to, rush upon, swoop down.
 aedificium, *l. n.*, building, home-stead.
 aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum, build.
 Aedui, *l. m.*, an Aeduan; in plur., the Aedui, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.
 aegrē, adv., (*aegrus, aegerrimē*), scarcely, with difficulty.
 aequaliter, adv., uniformly.
 aequinoctium, *l. n.*, equinox.
 aëa, aëria, *n.*, bronze, copper.
 aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer.
 aestimō, āre, āvi, ātum, estimate, value, assess.
 aestuārium, *l. n.*, estuary, inlet.
 aestus, ōis, *m.*, tide.
 aetās, -tātis, *f.*, age, years.
 afferō, afferre, attuli, allātum, bring.
 af-fligō, ere, -flxi, -flxum, fasten, attack.
 affirmō, āre, āvi, ātum, declare, assert.
 afflixus, *a. um*, from affligo.
 afflicto, āre, āvi, ātum, buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.
 afflictus, *a. um*, from affligo.
 af-fligō, ere, -flxi, -flctum, shatter, damage, wreck.
 Āfricus, *l. m.*, south-west wind.
 ager, agri, *m.*, field, land, country, territory.
 agger, eris, *m.*, mound.
 ag-gredior, *l. gressus um*, attack.
 aggregō, āre, āvi, ātum, attach, join.
 agmen, -minis, *n.*, army on the march, line of march, column; novissimum agmen, the rear.
 agō, ere, ēgi, āctum, drive; bring up, advance; do, carry on.
 alacritās, -tātis, *f.*, eagerness, enthusiasm or keenness, dash.
 albus, *a. a.*, white.

aliēnus, *a. um*, unfavorable.
 aliquamdiū, adv., for some time.
 aliquantus, *a. um*, some; neut. as subst., some portion, a considerable part.
 aliqui, quā, quod, some, any.
 aliquis, quid, someone, something.
 aliter, adv., otherwise, in a different manner.
 alius, *a. ud.*, other, another; different; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; alii . . . alii, some . . . others.
 alō, ere, alui, altum, feed; rear, keep.
 Alpēs, ium, *f. plur.*, the Alps.
 alter, ern, erum, the other; the second.
 altitudo, -inis, *f.*, height; depth.
 altus, *a. um*, high, lofty; deep; neut. as subst., altum, *l. n.*, the deep, deep water, the sea.
 Ambiani, ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiani, a tribe in the north of Gaul.
 Āmentia, ae, *f.*, madness, folly. —
 amicitia, ae, *f.*, friendship, alliance.
 amittō, ere, -misi, -missum, lose.
 amplius, compar. adv., more, (any) further, besides.
 amplus, *a. um*, large, great.
 an, conj., or.
 Ancalites, um, *m.*, the Ancalites, a tribe in Britain.
 ancora, ae, *f.*, anchor.
 Andēs, ium; *m.*, the Andes, a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.
 angulus, *l. m.*, corner, angle.
 angustē, adv., closely.
 angustus, *a. um*, narrow, small, contracted; neut. as subst., critical position.
 animadver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum, notice, observe.
 animus, *l. m.*, soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage.
 annūtiū, *a. um*, of the year before.

annus, *I. m.*, year.

anser, *eris*, *m.*, goose.

ante, *prep. w. acc.*, before; *adv.*, before, formerly, previously; above.

anteh, *adv.*, before, previously.

ante-cess, *ere*, *-cessi*, *cessum*, precede; surpass.

antenna, *ae*, *f.*, yard.

ante-pōn, *ere*, *-posui*, *-positum*, place before, prefer, regard of more importance than.

antiquitas, *adv.*, in olden times, long ago.

Ap, a contraction for **Appius**.

aper-i, *ire*, *-ui*, *-itum*, open; *perf. part. pass.* **apertus** as *adj.*, open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.

appell, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, call.

appell, *re*, *-puli*, *-pulsus*, bring in to shore.

Appius, *I. m.*, a Roman praenomen.

apport, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, bring.

appropinqu, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, approach, draw near, come near.

appulus, *a*, *um*, from **appello**, *ere*.

aptus, *a*, *um*, suited, suitable, fit.

apud, *prep. w. acc.*, at, with, among, near, in the presence of.

aqua, *ae*, *f.*, water.

aquila, *ae*, *f.*, eagle, the standard of a Roman legion.

Aquitania, *ae*, *f.*, Aquitania, the south-western part of Gaul.

Aquitānus, *I. m.*, an Aquitanian; in plur., the Aquitani, a people dwelling in the south-western part of Gaul.

Ar-ar, *aris*, *m.*, the Arar, a river flowing south into the Rhone.

arbitr, *ari*, *m.*, arbitrator, judge.

arbitror, *ari*, *atus sum*, think, consider, judge.

arbor, *oris*, *f.*, tree.

arcess, *-s*, *ere*, *-ivi*, *-itum*, *summon*, send for, fetch; invite, call in.

Ardennus, *ae*, *f.*, the Ardennes, a forest in the north-east of Gaul.

Aridus, *a*, *um*, dry; *neut. as subst.*, dry land.

Arlovistus, *I. m.*, a chief of the Germans.

arma, *orum*, *n. plur.*, arms; tackle, equipment.

armamenta, *orum*, *n. plur.*, tackle, rigging, fittings.

armatus, *ae*, *f.*, armor.

arm, *are*, *avi*, *atum*, arm, equip, fit out; *perf. part. in plur. as subst.*, arm men.

aspectus, *us*, *m.*, appearance.

at, *conj.*, but; *at least*.

atque, *conj.*, and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.

Atrebat, *-batia*, *m.*, an Atrebatian; in plur., the Atrebates, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

Atrius, *I. m.*, Quintus Atrius, an officer of Caesar's.

at-ting, *ere*, *-tigi*, *-tictum*, touch, border on.

auctoritas, *-tatis*, *f.*, influence, weight, prestige; power.

audacter, *adv.*, boldly, confidently, fearlessly.

aude, *re*, *ausus sum*, dare, venture, attempt.

audi, *ire*, *ivi*, *itum*, hear, listen to, hear of.

Aulus, *I. m.*, a Roman praenomen.

aur, *as*, *a*, *um*, of gold, golden.

auriga, *ae*, *m.*, charioteer.

ausus, *a*, *um*, from **audeo**.

aut, *conj.*, or, or else; repeated, either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, but, whereas, while; moreover, now.

auxilior, *ari*, *atus sum*, give aid, help, assist.

auxilium, *I. n.*, aid, help, assistance, rescue; resource, support; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.

ave, *-s*, *ere*, *-ti*, *-sum*, turn away, turn aside.

Axona, *ae*, *f.*, a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.

B

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian*; m. as subst., **barbarus**, l, m., *a foreigner, barbarian, or native*.

Belgae, **Ārum**, m. plur., *the Belgians, a people occupying the north-east of Gaul*.

Belgium, l, n., *Belgium, the country of the Belgae*.

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*.

bellō, **Āre**, **Avi**, **Ātum**, *make war, fight*.

Bellovaci, **Ōrum**, m. plur., *the Bellovaci, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul*.

bellum, l, n., *war, hostilities, campaign*.

bene, adv., (*melius*, *optimē*), *well*.

beneficium, l, n., *kindness, favor*.

Bibrax, **-actia**, f., *a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul*.

Bibroci, **Ōrum**, m. plur., *the Bibroci, a tribe of Britain*.

biui, ac, a, *two each, two*.

brevi, e, *short*; as adv., *brevi*, *in a short time, quickly*.

brevitas, **-tātis**, f., *shortness*.

Britanni, **Ōrum**, m. plur., *the Britons*.

Britannia, ac, f., *Britain*.

Britannicus, a, um, *British, of or with the Britons*.

bruma, ac, f., *the winter solstice*.

Brutus, l, m., *Decimus Brutus, a lieutenant with Caesar*.

C

C., an abbreviation of **Cāius** (or **Cāius**).

cadō, ere, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *fall, be slain*.

caeruleus, a, um, *blue, dark blue*.

Caesar, **-aris**, m., *Caius Julius Caesar, the Roman general*.

Cāius, l, m., *see Cāius*.

Caleti, **Ōrum**, m. plur., *the Caleti, a tribe at the mouth of the Seine*.

campus, l, m., *field, plain*.

Cantium, l, n., *Kent, in the south-east of England*.

capillus, l, m., *hair*.

capio, ere, **cēpi**, **captum**, *take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach, make; take up, adopt, form*.

captivus, l, m., *captive, prisoner*.

capus, **ūs**, m., *capacity, nature*.

cap-ut, **-itis**, n., *head, person*.

carō, **carnis**, f., *flesh, meat*.

carrus, l, m., *cart, wagon*.

Carvilius, l, m., *a king ruling in Kent*.

Cassi, **Ōrum**, m. plur., *the Cassi, a tribe in Britain*.

Cassivellaunus, l, m., *a British chief*.

castellum, l, n., *fort, stronghold, redoubt*.

castra, **Ōrum**, n. plur., *camp, encampment*.

cāsus, **ūs**, m., *happening, emergency, contingency; accident, chance*.

causa, ac, f., *cause, reason, motive, provocation*; in abl. sing., *for the sake of, for the purpose of*.

cēdō, ere, **cessi**, **cessum**, *retreat, give way, retire; yield; withdraw*.

celer, **eris**, ere, *swift, rapid*.

celeritas, **-tātis**, f., *swiftness, speed, rapidity, mobility*.

celeriter, adv., (*celerius*, *celerimē*), *swiftly, quickly, rapidly*.

Celtae, **Ārum**, m. plur., *the Celts, or Gauls, one of the three great nations inhabiting Gaul*.

Cēnimāgni, **Ōrum**, m. plur., *the Cenimagni, a tribe of Britain*.

centum, *a hundred*.

centuriō, **-ōnis**, m., *centurion (an officer in the Roman army)*.

cēpi, from **capio**.

certāmen, **-minis**, n., *contest, struggle, engagement*.

certē, adv., *certainly, at least, at all events*.

certus, a, um, certain, fixed, specified, exact, sure, definite; **certiorem facere**, to inform.

ceteri, ae, a, the others, the rest.

Cingetorix, -igis, m., 1. a chief of the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.

circliter, adv. and prep. w. acc., about.

circuitus, a, um, perf. part. of **circumco**.

circuitus, as, m., circumference, circuit.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, surround, encircle.

circum-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum or **circuitum**, go around, make the rounds of, visit.

circumundō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, surround, invest, blockade.

circum-sistō, -ere, -steti, surround.

circum-stō, -stare, -steti, surround.

circum-ventō, -ire, -veni, -ventum, surround, outflank; betray.

cis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

citerior, ius, (comparative) *hither, nearer*.

citō, adv., (citius, citissimē), quickly, nimbly.

citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

civitas, -tatis, f., state.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -avi, -atum, keep shouting, cry out.

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, shouting, cry.

classis, is, f., fleet.

Claudius, I, m., Appius Claudius, consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum, close; w. agmen, bring up the rear.

cliēns, -entis, m., dependant, vassal.

coactus, a, um, from **cogo**.

coēgi, from **cogo**.

coēpi, -isse, coēptus sum, began, have begun.

coerceō, -ere, -vi, -itum, restrain, check, coerce.

cō-gnoscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, perceive, learn, find out, ascertain, become acquainted with; in perf. tenses, know, be aware.

cōgō, -ere, coēgi, coactum, collect, gather, get together; compel, force.

co-hors, -hortis, f., a cohort, one-tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., encouraging, address, appeal.

cohortor, -ari, -atus sum, encourage, address, urge, call upon.

collātus, a, um, from **confero**.

col-laudō, -āre, -avi, -atum, praise, highly commend.

co-ligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, gather; with se, collect oneself, recover, rally.

collis, is, m., hill.

collocō, -āre, -avi, -atum, place, station; arrange, stow.

colloquium, I, n., interview, conference.

col-loquor, I, -locutus sum, converse, confer, take counsel, have an interview.

colō, -ere, colui, cultum, till, cultivate.

color, -ōris, m., color.

commectus, as, m., supplies, provisions; passage, trip, relay.

commendō, -āre, -avi, -atum, commend, entrust.

comminus, adv., hand to hand, in close combat.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, join; trust; w. proclium, begin.

Commius, I, m., a king of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv., easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.

commodus, a, um, convenient, suitable, advantageous, favorable; neut. as sub., commodum, I, advantage, profit.

commoror, -ari, -atus sum, stay, wait, delay.

com-moveō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, move, stir, alarm, disturb; influence, impress.

- communis**, e, common, general, joint, concerted.
- commutatio**, -ōnis, i., change, turn.
- comparō**, āre, āvi, ātum, prepare, arrange for, provide, procure, raise, get.
- compellō**, ere, -pull, -pulsū, drive, drive in, gather.
- comperio**, ire, -peri, -pertum, learn, find out, discover.
- complēō**, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill, fill up; man.
- complārēs**, a, several, many, a great many.
- comportō**, āre, āvi, ātum, bring in, collect.
- comprehendō**, ere, -hendi, -hensum, seize, grasp, catch, capture, take.
- compull**, from compello.
- concidō**, ere, -cidi, fall.
- concidō**, ere, -cidi, -cium, cut down, slay; perf. part. as adj., cut up, broken.
- conciliō**, āre, āvi, ātum, win over, reconcile.
- concilium**, i, n., meeting, assembly, council.
- conclusus**, a, um, from concludo.
- concursum**, ūs, m., rushing together, collision.
- condiciō**, -ōnis, f., terms, agreement.
- Condrusi**, ōrum, m. plur., the Condrusi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- condūcō**, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, gather, assemble.
- cōnferciō**, ire, -fersi, -fertum, pack closely; perf. part. cōnfertus, a, um, crowded together, in close array, in close order, in masses.
- cōnferō**, cōnferre, cōtuli, cōlātum, gather, collect, bring in, convey; with se, betake oneself; w. culpam, lay.
- cōnfertus**, a, um, from confercio.
- cōnfectum**, adv., immediately, at once.
- cōn-ficiō**, ere, -feci, -fectum, finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; bring to a close, in passive, be over; be spent, exhausted, worn out.
- cōn-fidō**, ere, -fideus sum, trust, rely on, have confidence, be confident, feel sure.
- cōnfirmō**, āre, āvi, ātum, strengthen; establish; declare, give an assurance; encourage, reassure, rouse.
- cōnflans**, a, um, from confido.
- cōnflgō**, ere, -fligi, -lictum, contend, engage, fight.
- cōnfluens**, entis, m., confluence.
- cōngredior**, i, -gressus sum, engage, contend, fight.
- cōn-iciō**, ere, -ici, -iectum, hurl, cast, throw; put, place.
- cōnjunctim**, adv., jointly, together.
- cōn-jungō**, ere, -jūxi, -junctum, join, connect, unite.
- cōn-juratio**, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, combination, league.
- cōnjurō**, āre, āvi, ātum, take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.
- cōnor**, āri, ātus sum, try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.
- cōn-scendō**, ere, -scendi, -scensum, climb up; embark on, go on board.
- cōn-scribō**, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, enlist, enroll, levy.
- cōnsector**, āri, ātus sum, follow up, pursue.
- cōnsecutus**, a, um, from consequor.
- cōnsēdi**, from consido.
- cōnsensu**, ūs, m., agreement, consent.
- cōn-sentiō**, ire, -sensi, -sensum, combine, conspire.
- cōn-sequor**, i, -secutus sum, follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.
- cōn-sidō**, ere, -sidi, -sessum, encamp, take up a position, settle.

cōsiliūm, *I*, *n.*, plan, design, intention, resolve, purpose; judgment, prudence, discretion.

cōsimilis, *c*, very similar, like.

cōn-sistō, *ere*, -*stiti*, take up position, stand, get (or keep) a footing; stand still, halt, stop, make a stand.

cōnsolior, *āri*, *ātus sum*, console, speak kindly.

cōnspectus, *ūs*, *m.*, sight, view, presence.

cōn-spicō, *ere*, -*spexi*, -*spectum*, catch sight of, observe, see.

cōnspicor, *āri*, *ātus sum*, catch sight of, observe, see.

cōnspirō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, combine, conspire, join a movement.

cōnstanter, *adv.*, uniformly.

cōnstiti, from *constato*.

cōnstit-uō, *ere*, -*ui*, *ātum*, establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.

cōn-stō, *āre*, -*stiti*, -*stātum*, stand firm; impersonal *usq*, it is certain, agreed.

cōn-suēscō, *ere*, -*suēvi*, -*suētum*, become accustomed; in perf. tenses, be accustomed, be wont.

cōn-suētū-dō, -*diuis*, *f.*, custom, habit, way.

cōn-sul, -*ulis*, *m.*, consul, the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.

cōn-sul-ō, *ere*, -*ui*, -*tum*, consult; *w. dat.*, consult the interests of, take thought for.

cōn-sultō, *adv.*, designedly, on purpose.

cōn-sūmō, *ere*, -*sūmpi*, *sūmp-tum*, spend; consume, exhaust; lose, destroy.

conten-dō, *ere*, -*di*, -*tum*, hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert oneself, take active steps, make every preparation; struggle, fight, contend, encounter.

contentiō, -*ōnis*, *f.*, struggling, contest, rivalry.

contestor, *āri*, *ātus sum*, call upon, invoke.

continēns, *entis*, *f.*, the continent, the mainland.

continenter, *adv.*, continually.

con-tineō, *ere*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*, contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold; bound, surround, occupy; pres. part. *as adj.*, **continēns**, -*entis*, continual, incessant.

continuus, *a*, *um*, successive, without interruption.

contrā, *1. adv.*, against, in opposition; *2. prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against.

con-trahō, *ere*, -*trāxi*, -*tractum*, collect, gather together, *ass* able.

contuli, from *confero*.

con-veniō, *ire*, -*vēni*, -*ventum*, come together, meet, assemble, gather.

conventus, *ūs*, *m.*, meeting, assembly; *assize*.

con-ver-tō, *ere*, -*ti*, -*sum*, turn, change, alter.

convocō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, call together, call, summon, assemble.

co-orior, *iri*, -*oritus sum*, arise, spring up, break out.

cōpia, *ae*, *f.*, supply, abundance, plenty, quantify; in plur., forces, troops; resources, stores.

cōpiōsus, *a*, *um*, well-supplied, wealthy.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person, with one's own eyes.

cornū, *ūs*, *n.*, horn; wing (of an army).

corp-us, -*oris*, *n.*, body, person.

Cōrus, *1. m.*, the north-west wind.

cotidianus, *a*, *um*, daily.

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

Cotta, *ae*, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Crassus, *1. m.*, Publius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crēber, *bra*, *brum*, frequent, numerous, repeated, close together.

crudeliter, *adv.*, cruelly.

culpa, *ae*, *f.*, fault, blame.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with, together with*.

cum, conj., *when, whenever, while; as, since; although; cum primum, as soon as; cum... tum, both... and, not only... but also*.

cunctor, *ari*, *atus sum*, *hesitate*.

cupidē, adv., *eagerly*.

cupiditas, *-tatis*, *f.*, *eagerness, eager desire*.

cupidus, *a, um*, *eager, desirous, fond*.

cup-īō, ere, *-ivī, -itum*, *be eager*.

cūrō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *attend to, take care; with gerundive, cause to be (done), have (done)*.

currus, *ūs, m.*, *chariot*.

currus, *ūs, m.*, *running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage*.

custōdia, *ae, f.*, *guard, picket, patrol*.

D

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of*.

dē-cēdō, ere, *-cessi, -cessum*, *withdraw, depart*.

decem, *ten*.

dē-cernō, ere, *-crēvi, -crētum*, *decide, determine; decree, order*.

dē-certō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *fight a decisive battle, divide the issue*.

decimus, *a, um*, *tenth*.

Decimus, *I, m.*, *a Roman praenomen*.

dē-clivis, *e*, *sloping*.

dē-crētus, *a, um*, *from decerno*.

dē-crēvi, *from decerno*.

dē-currō, ere, *-curri, (-cucurri), -cursum*, *run down*.

dē-dec-us, *-oris, n.*, *disgrace*.

dedi, *from do*.

dē-didi, *from dedo*.

dē-diti-cius, *a, um*, *surrendered; m. as subst, prisoner*.

dē-ditiō, *-ōnis, f.*, *surrender, submission, capitulation*.

dē-dō, ere, *-didi, -ditum*, *surrender, give up*.

dē-ducō, ere, *-dūxi, -ductum*, *lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring (down); launch; lead (home), marry*.

dē-fatigō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *weary, exhaust, wear out*.

dē-fectiō, *-ōnis, f.*, *revolt*.

dē-fendō, ere, *-fendi, -fensum*, *defend, protect*.

dē-fensor, *-ōris, m.*, *defender*.

dē-ferō, *-ferre, -tuli, -lātum*, *carry, bring, convey; report; give, confer; in pass, drift*.

dē-ficiō, ere, *-feci, -fectum*, *fail, give out, be wanting, run short; revolt, forsake, break off*.

dē-fligō, ere, *-fixi, -fixum, fix*, *set, fasten*.

dē-inceps, adv., *in turn, in succession*.

dē-inde, adv., *then, thereupon, next*.

dē-jiciō, ere, *-jeci, -jectum*, *cast down; carry down, sweep down; disappoint*.

dē-lātus, *a, um*, *from deferō*.

dē-lēctus, *a, um*, *and dē-lēgi from dē-ligo, ere*.

dē-ligō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *fasten, tie, make fast, moor*.

dē-ligō, ere, *-lēgi, -lēctum*, *pick out, choose, select*.

dē-lit-escō, ere, *-ui*, *hide, lurk, lie concealed, lie in wait*.

dē-metō, ere, *-messui, -messum*, *cut, reap*.

dē-migrō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *depart, move away, abandon*.

dē-mōstrō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *point out, show, explain, state, mention*.

dē-mum, adv., *at last, at length*.

dē-ni, *ae, a*, *ten each, in groups of ten*.

dē-nsus, *a, um*, *dense, close, thick*.

dē-per-cō, *-ire, -il*, *perish, be lost, be destroyed*.

dē-pōnō, ere, *-posui, -positum*, *lay down, lay aside, give up, abandon; place, put*.

dēportō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, carry off, remove.

dēpositus, *a, um*, from *depono*.

dēprecor, *Arī, Atus sum*, beg off, petition against, request (not).

dēserō, *ere, -ul, -tum*, desert, abandon, forsake.

dēsiderō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, desire, miss, lose.

dē-silō, *ire, -silul, -sultum*, leap down.

dē-sistō, *ere, -sistil, -sistum*, cease; abandon, give up.

dēspectus, *As, m.*, view (down).

dēspērō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, give up hope, despair; despair of.

dēstinō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, fasten.

dēstiti, from *desisto*.

dēsūm, *deesse, dēfui*, be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail.

dēterro, *ere, ul, itum*, frighten, intimidate, deter, discourage, prevent.

dē-tinō, *ere, -tinul, -tentum*, detain, hinder, delay.

dē-trahō, *ere, -trāxi, -trāctum*, take from, snatch from.

dētrimentum, *l, n.*, loss.

dē-trādō, *ere, -trāsi, -trāsum*, strip off, remove.

dē-tulī, from *defero*.

deus, *l, m.*, god.

dē-venīō, *ire, -vēni, -ventum*, come (down).

dexter, *tra, trum*, right.

dixō, *ere, dixi, dictum*, say, state, mention; appoint, name.

dictum, *l, n.*, remark, statement.

diēs, *di, m.* (rarely *f.*), day; ad *diem*, punctually.

diferō, *differre, distulī, dilātum*, differ, be different.

difficultās, *-tātis, f.*, difficulty.

dignitās, *-tātis, f.*, worth, dignity, honor.

diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously.

dimicō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, fight, strive, contend, engage.

dimidium, *l, n.*, half.

di-mittō, *ere, -misi, missum*, send out, despatch; dismiss, send away, disband; abandon, quit.

di-ripiō, *ere, -ripiul, -reptum*, plunder.

dis-cedō, *ere, -cessi, -cessum*, go away, withdraw, depart, move away, disperse; with *ab*, leave, abandon, desert.

discessus, *As, m.*, departure, withdrawal.

dis-jiciō, *ere, -jici, -jectum*, tear off.

dis-pār, *-paris*, unequal.

di-spergō, *ere, -spersi, -asperum*, scatter, disperse.

dis-pōnō, *ere, -posui, -positum*, place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array.

dis-sipō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, scatter, disperse, rout.

distrib-uō, *ere, -ui, -tum*, allot, assign, distribute, divide.

diū, *adv.*, (*diutius, diutissimē*), long, for a long time.

diver-tō, *ere, -ti, -sum*, separate, isolate.

di-vidō, *ere, -vixi, -visum*, divide, separate.

divinus, *a, um*, divine, of the gods.

dō, *dare, dedi, datum*, give, grant, allow; *w. in fugam*, put; *operam dare*, take pains, see to it.

doc-eō, *ere, -ui, -tum*, teach, inform, show, state.

dolor, *-oris, m.*, grief, pain; annoyance, vexation, resentment.

domesticus, *a, um*, at home; *w. bellum*, intestine, civil.

Domitius, *l, m.*, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul, 54 B.C.

domus, *As, f.*, house, home.

dubitō, *Are, Avi, Atum*, hesitate; doubt, have doubts.

ducenti, *ae, a*, two hundred.

ducō, *ere, duxi, ductum*, lead, draw, bring, take; consider, think.

dum, conj., *while; until.*
Dumnorix, -igis, m., a leader of the Aedui.
duo, ae, o, *two.*
duodecim, *twelve.*
duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth.*
duodēni, ae, a, *twelve each, twelve.*
duodēviginti, indecl., *eighteen.*
dupl-ex, -icis, *twofold, double.*
duplicē, āre, āvi, ātum, *double.*
Dūrus, l, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune with Caesar.
dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide.*

E

ē, see **ex**.
Eburōnes, um, m. plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.
ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead out, lead forth.*
ē-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, *make, cause, produce; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; complete, finish.*
ē-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *escape.*
egēō, ēre, ui, *be in need, lack; pres. part. as adj., egēns, -entis, needy.*
egestās, -tātis, f., *need, poverty, destitution.*
ego, mei, I.
ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, *go out, depart, leave, quit; land, disembark.*
ē-gregiō, adv., *excellently, well, admirably, strongly.*
ē-gregius, a, um, *eminent, marked.*
ē-gressus, a, um, *from egredior.*
ē-gressus, ūs, m., *landing.*
ē-iciō, ere, -iēci, -iectum, *fling out, drive out, cast up; w. ac, rush.*
ē-jusmodi, *of such a nature, such.*
ē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *send out, hurl, cast.*
enim, conj., *for, now.*

ēō, ire, ii (ivt), itum, *go, march, pass, proceed, advance.*
ēō, adv., *thither, there, to that place, to them (it, etc.); w. comparatives, the (more), all the (more).*
ēōdem, adv., *to the same place, in the same direction.*
equ-es, -itis, m., *horseman, horse-soldier; in plur., cavalry.*
equester, tris, tre, *of cavalry, cavalry.*
equitās, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, I, m., *horse.*
ē-ripiō, ere, -ripui, -reptum, *take away, destroy.*
ē-ruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sally, sortie.*
essedārius, I, m., *charioteer, chariot-fighter.*
essedum, I, n., or **essedā**, ae, f., *chariot, war-chariot.*
Esubii, ūrum, m. plur., *the Esubii*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.
et, conj., *and; et...et, both.... and.*
etiam, conj., *also, further; even, still.*
etsi, conj., *even if, although.*
ē-veniō, ire, -vēni, -ventum, *turn out, result.*
ē-ventus, ūs, m., *outcome, result; experience.*
ē-vocō, āre, āvi, ātum, *call out, summon, intell.*
ex (sometimes **ē** before consonants), prep. w. abl., *from, out of; of; after; in consequence of; in accordance with; of direction, on.*
exagitiō, āre, āvi, ātum, *harass.*
exāminō, āre, āvi, ātum, *weigh, test.*
ex-ārdēscō, ere, -āraī, -ārsūm, *blaze forth, become enraged, become incensed.*
ex-ēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, *go out, move away, withdraw, leave, quit.*
ex-ēpiō, ere, -ēpi, -eptum, *catch, come upon; take up; succeed, relieve.*

excitō, āre, avi, ātum, rouse, incite.
 ex-clūdō, ere, -clūd, -clūsum, cut off, shut off, prevent.
 excursiō, -ōnis, f., sally, sortie.
 excusō, āre, avi, ātum, excuse; w. se, apologize.
 ex-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, go out, go forth, leave, proceed.
 exercitiū, -iū, f., training, exercise, practice.
 exercitō, āre, avi, ātum, train, season.
 exercitus, -us, m., army.
 exiguū, -itū, f., smallness, small extent or size; shortness.
 exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.
 existimō, āre, avi, ātum, think, believe, consider; estimate, judge.
 expediō, ire, ivi, itum, free; get ready; perf. part. as adj., expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, free, rapid, quick, easy; in light marching order.
 expeditiō, -ōnis, f., expedition.
 expellō, ere, -pell, -pulsum, drive out.
 experior, iri, -tus sum, try.
 explorātor, -tōris, m., scout.
 explorō, āre, avi, ātum, examine, reconnoitre, find out.
 ex-pōnō, ere, -poni, -positum, display; disembark, land.
 exportō, āre, avi, ātum, carry off, remove.
 expugnō, āre, avi, ātum, storm, take by storm, capture.
 expulsus, a, um, from expelle.
 ex-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, spring up, arise, come on.
 expectō, āre, avi, ātum, look for, await, wait for; wait to see, wait.
 existit, from exsiste.
 exstō, āre, stand out, project.
 ex-struō, ere, -struxi, -structum, raise, build.
 ex-trahō, ere, -traxi, -tractum, drag out, waste by delay, spin out, fritter away.
 extrēmus, a, um, superl., farthest, most distant, last, extreme.

F

faber, bri, m., workman, engineer.
 facile, adv., easily, readily.
 facilis, e, easy.
 faciō, ere, feci, factum, (pass., fci, feci, factus sum), make; do, act; form, build, construct; w. proclitum, fight; in passive, take place, come to pass, happen, result.
 factum, i, n., deed, act, action.
 facultās, -tātis, f., opportunity, chance, power; supply, abundance.
 fagus, i, m., beech.
 fallō, ere, feci, falsum, deceive, cheat; disappoint.
 falsus, a, um, false.
 falx, falcis, f., sickle, hook.
 familiaritās, -tātis, f., intimacy, friendship.
 fas n. indecl., right (by divine law).
 felleter, adv., happily, successfully.
 ferāx, -ācis, fertile, fruitful.
 ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, practically; generally, for the most part; w. negatives, scarcely.
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; run, go; signa ferre, advance; w. auxilium, lend.
 ferreus, a, um, of iron, iron.
 ferrum, i, n., iron.
 fertilis, -itās, f., fertility, richness.
 ferus, a, um, wild, fierce, ferocious.
 fidēlis, e, faithful, loyal.
 fides, ei, f., faith, pledge, word; faithfulness, devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, allegiance; fidem facere, give a pledge, gain belief.
 figura, ae, f., shape, build.
 filius, i, m., son.
 finis, is, m., end, limit; in plur., borders, territory, land, district.
 finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjacent, bordering; masc. plur. as subst., neighbors.

fā, fieri, factus sum, pass. of
facio, be made, be done; take
place, come to pass, happen, re-
sult.

firmiter, adv., firmly, steadily.

firmus, a, um, strong, powerful.

flexō, ere, flexi, flexum, turn.

flex, ere, flexi, flexum, weep, be
in tears.

flō, āre, avi, atum, blow.

fluctus, ūs, m., wave.

flumen, -inis, n., river.

fore, fut. infin. of sum.

forma, ae, f., shape, form, build.

fors, forte, f., (other cases want-
ing), chance; in abl., by chance,
perchance, perhaps.

fortis, e, brave, coura., ūs.

fortiter, adv., bravely, gallantly,
stoutly.

fortūa, ae, f., fortune, chance,
good fortune, success; in plur.,
possessions, fortunes, interests.

fossa, ae, f., trench, ditch, moat.

frangō, ere, frēgi, fractum,
break, shatter, wreck; crush.

fremitus, ūs, m., din, noise.

frig-us, -oris, n., cold, frost, cold
weather.

frons, frontis, f., forehead; front.

frumentarius, a, um, of grain;
res frumentaria, supply of
corn, grain, provisions.

frumentor, āri, ātus sum, get
grain, forage.

frumentum, i, n., grain, corn,
crops, provisions.

frustrā, adv., in vain, without ef-
fect.

fuga, ae, f., flight, rout; escape;
in fugam convertere, conficere
or dare, put to flight.

fugō, ere, fugi, fugitum, flee,
escape.

funda, ae, f., sling.

fundi-tor, -tōris, m., slinger.

fūlis, is, m., rope, cable; rigging.

futurus, a, um, from sum.

G

Gaius, i, or Cāius, i, m., a Roman
praenomen.

galea, ae, f., helmet.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul. 1. The Roman
provinces of Gaul, Gallia Cisal-
pina, or Citerior, the northern
part of Italy; and Gallia Trans-
alpina or Ulterior, the south-
eastern part of France. 2. The
country west of the Rhine and the
Alps and north of the Pyrenees,
thus including France, Switzer-
land, Belgium, and part of Hol-
land and Germany. 3. The cen-
tral and largest of the three parts
into which Gaul in the previous
sense is divided, the Belpae and
the Aquitani holding the other
two.

Gallicus, a, um, of Gaul, of the
Gauls, Gallic.

gallina, ae, f., hen.

Gallus, i, m., 1. a Gaul; 2. Mar-
cus Trebius Gallus, one of Cae-
sar's officers.

gens, gentis, f., tribe, race, nation.

genus, -eris, n., race, family;
kind, sort, class.

Germania, ae, f., Germany, the
region east of the Rhine.

Germanicus, a, um, German, of
or with the Germans.

Germanus, i, m., a German.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, man-
age; carry on, wage, undertake;
do; in pass., take place, go on.

gladius, i, m., sword.

gratia, ae, f., favor, good-will;
influence, credit, popularity;
gratitude, thanks.

gravis, e, heavy; severe, serious.

gravitas, -itatis, f., weight.

graviter, adv., heavily, severely,
bitterly, seriously; graviter fer-
re, be annoyed, be offended, feel
keenly.

gubernator, -tōris, m., pilot,
helmsman.

gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, taste, eat.

H

habēs, ēre, ul. itum, have, possess, occupy; keep; hold; treat, regard, consider; w. orationem, deliver, make.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian, of the Helvetii; masc. plur. ansuet., the Helvetii, a tribe of Gaul dwelling in modern Switzerland.

hiberna, ōrum, n. plur., winter camp, winter-quarters.

Hibernia, ae, f., Ireland.

hic, hae, hōc, this; he; the following; the present; often loosely, that; hōc, neut. abl. as adv., in this way, on this account, and w. comparatives, the.

hic, adv., here, herein.

hiemō, ōre, avi, ātum, winter, pass the winter.

hiema, hiemis, f., winter, stormy weather.

Hispania, ae, f., Spain.

homō, -inis, m. and f., man, person; in plur., people, population, inhabitants.

hōra, ae, f., hour (one-twelfth of the daylight).

horridus, a, um, horrible, frightful.

hortor, ōri, ātus sum, urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.

hosp-es, -itis, m., guest, friend.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

hūc, adv., to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.

hūmānus, a, um, civilized, refined.

humilis, e, low, shallow.

humilitās, -tātis, f., lowness, low build.

I

ibi, adv., there.

iecius, i, m., a leader of the Remi.

ideirō, adv., on that account, for this reason.

idem, eadem, idem, the same; also.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit, competent, convenient, favorable.

igitur, therefore.

ignōrō, ōre, avi, ātum, not know, be unacquainted with, have no knowledge of.

ignōscō, ere, ignōvi, ignōtum, forgive, pardon, overlook, w. dat.

illātus, a, um, from infero.

ille, illa, illud, that, he.

illū, adv., to that point, thither, there.

Illyricum, i, n., a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

impedimentum, i, n., hindrance; in plur., baggage, baggage-train.

impediō, ire, ivi, itum, hinder, obstruct, hamper, interfere with, make difficult or impossible, entangle, embarrass; perf. part. as adj., impeditus, a, um, difficult, impassable, inaccessible, impenetrable.

im-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum, incite, induce.

imperātor, -ōris, m., commander (in chief).

imperātum, i, n., order, command, bidding.

imperitus, a, um, inexperienced, unacquainted, w. gen.

imperium, i, n., command, order; power, supreme power, control, supreme command; rule, supremacy, authority, discipline.

imperō, ōre, avi, ātum, levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule, issue commands.

impetrō, ōre, avi, ātum, obtain, gain one's request, prevail on.

impetus, ōis, m., attack, onset, charge; rush, violence, dash.

implorō, ōre, avi, ātum, beg, entreat, beseech.

im-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place or put (on).

importō, ōre, avi, ātum, bring in, introduce, import.

imprōvisus, a, um, unforeseen; de improviso, unexpectedly.

imprudens, -entis, unsuspecting, of one's guard.

imprudens, -entis, *ac, f.*, ignorance, thoughtlessness, indiscretion.

imma, a, um, superlative of *inferus*.

in, prep. (1) w. *abl.*, in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; (2) w. *acc.*, into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to.

inanis, e, empty.

incendium, i, n., fire.

in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -ctum, set on fire, burn.

incertus, a, um, uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.

in-cipō, ere, -cipi, -ceptum, begin.

incitō, āre, āvi, ātum, urge on, drive forward, impel, set in motion; arouse, excite; perf. part. w. *equus*, at full speed.

incognitus, a, um, unknown.

incolō, ere, -ui, -itum, inhabit, dwell, live.

incolumis, e, safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.

incommodum, i, n., misfortune, disaster, loss, damage.

incredibilis, e, incredible, extraordinary.

increpō, āre, āvi, ātum, reproach, upbraid, taunt.

incursō, -ōnis, f., raid, inroad, invasion.

incūsō, āre, āvi, ātum, blame, attack, censure.

inde, adv., from that place or country, thence; then, next.

ind-uō, ere, -ui, -itum, put on.

Indutimēnus, i, m., a chief of the Treveri.

in-ē, -ire, -ii (-ivi) -itum, enter upon; w. *consilium*, adopt, form; w. words of time, begin.

inferō, inferre, intuli, illatum, bring in, put in or upon; cause, inflict, inspire, rouse; w. *bellum*, make, wage (offensive); w. *signa*, advance; w. *causam*, advance, allege.

inferus, a, um, low; compar. inferior, lower; superl. *infimus* or *imma*, lowest, at the foot or base.

in-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, stain.

infimus, a, um, superl. of *inferus*.

infinitus, a, um, endless, boundless, unlimited, vast.

infirmitas, -tatis, f., weakness; fickleness, inconstancy.

infirmus, a, um, weak, unsound.

in-fluō, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, flow, empty.

infra, adv., below, further down.

ingens, entis, huge, vast.

in-gredior, i, -gressus sum, enter, penetrate.

inimicus, a, um, unfriendly, hostile; masc. as subst, enemy.

iniquus, a, um, uneven, unfavorable; unfair, unjust.

initium, i, n., beginning; frontier, borders.

initus, a, um, from inco.

in-ji-ciō, ere, -jici, -jectum, put in; inspire, instil.

injuria, ac, f., wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, harm, violence, outrage.

in-nāscor, i, -nātus sum, be born in, spring up in.

in-nitor, i, -nisus or -nixus sum, lean on.

inopia, ac, f., want, scarcity, lack, deficiency.

inopinans, -antis, not expecting, unprepared, off one's guard.

inquam, inquit, defective verb, say.

insciens, entis, not knowing, being unaware.

inscientia, ac, f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance (with).

inscius, a, um, ignorant, unaware.

in-sequor, i, -secutus sum, follow up, pursue.

in-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, insert.

Insidiae, *Arum*, f. plur., ambush, treachery.

Insignia, *e*, notable; *n.* as subst., *Insigne*, *is*, badge.

Insinuō, *Are*, *Avi*, *Atum*, insinuate; *w.* *se*, work one's way in.

In-stis, *ere*, -*stis*, stand, keep one's footing, get a foothold.

Instābilia, *e*, unsteady, changeable, irregular.

Instit-uō, *ere*, -*ui*, -*atum*, undertake, arrange, begin, set to, set about; adopt, decide on; equip, get ready; draw up.

Institutum, *i*, *n.*, custom, practice.

In-stō, *Are*, -*stis*, -*stium*, press forward; threaten.

In-struō, *ere*, -*stru*, -*stru*, draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.

Instruē-faciō, *ere*, -*fec*, -*factum*, train.

Instruē-tus, *a*, *um*, unaccustomed.

Insula, *ae*, *f.*, island.

Integer, *gra*, *gram*, untouched, fresh, uncearied.

Intel-legō, *ere*, -*lex*, -*lectum*, understand, be aware, perceive, observe, see, know, learn.

Inter, prep. *w.* *acc.*, between, among; **inter se**, one another, to or with one another.

Inter-cedō, *ere*, -*cess*, -*cessum*, come, arise or be between.

Inter-cladō, *ere*, -*clad*, -*cladum*, cut off.

Inter-dicō, *ere*, -*dix*, -*dictum*, forbid, warn.

Interē, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

Interest, from *intersum*.

Inter-ficiō, *ere*, -*fec*, -*fectum*, slay, put to death, kill.

Interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

Interior, comparative *adj.*, inner, interior; plur., those living in the interior.

Inter-mittō, *ere*, -*mis*, -*missum*, leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue, postpone, cease, neglect; let pass, in pass., go by, elapse; put between, in pass., intervene.

Intermeriō, -*nis*, *f.*, destruction, extermination.

Inter-pōnō, *ere*, -*posu*, -*positum*, introduce, interpose, in pass., intervene; pledge.

Inter-scindō, *ere*, -*scidi*, -*scissum*, break down, destroy.

Inter-sum, -*esse*, - *fui*, be between, be engaged in, take part in; as impersonal verb, **interest**, it is of importance, it concerns.

Intervallum, *i*, *n.*, interval, distance.

Interventus, *us*, *m.*, coming on.

Intrā, prep. *w.* *acc.*, within.

Intrō-ducō, *ere*, -*dux*, -*ductum*, lead in, bring in.

Introitus, *us*, *m.*, entrance, approach.

Intrōrus, *adv.*, within.

Infrā, from *infero*.

Institū-tus, *a*, *um*, unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar, unwonted.

Inutilis, *e*, useless, unserviceable, unavailable.

In-veniō, *ire*, -*veni*, -*ventum*, come upon, find; learn.

Invictus, *a*, *um*, unconquered, invincible.

Invitō, *Are*, *Avi*, *Atum*, invite, induce.

Ipsē, *a*, *um*, himself, he himself, itself, etc.; very.

Ir-rideō, *ere*, -*ris*, -*risum*, ridicule, jeer at.

Is, *ea*, *id*, that; *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*; *w.* *rel.*, *the*; *such*; *abl. eō* as *adv.*, so much, *the*, on that account.

Ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.

Italia, *ae*, *f.*, Italy.

Itaque, *adv.*, therefore, so, accordingly.

Item, *adv.*, likewise, also, in the same way.

Iter, *itineris*, *n.*, route, march, road, journey; **magnum iter**, a forced march; **iter facere**, to march.

Iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

Itius, *adj.* with *portus*, a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.

J

- jaceō, ēre, ul, itum, lie, be fallen.**
jacō, ere, jeci, jectum, throw, cast, hurl; throw up.
jam, adv., now, at length, already; w. negatives, any more, longer.
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, order, bid, command, direct.
judicō, ēre, avi, atum, judge, decide, consider, think.
jugum, l. n., yoke.
jumentum, l. n., beast of burden.
jungō, ere, junxi, junctum, join, unite.
Jura, ae, m., a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.
jū, jūris, n., right, rights, law.
jurjurandum, jūrijurandi, n., oath.
justus, a, um, just, fair, legitimate.
juxtā, adv., near, close by.

L

- L., an abbreviation for Lucius.**
Laberius, l. m., Quintus Laberius
Durus, a military tribune with Caesar.
Labiēnus, l. m., Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
labor, -oris, m., toil, hardship, labor, exertion.
lāber, l. lapsus sum, slip; err, do wrong, fall away, go astray.
labōrō, ēre, avi, atum, toil; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.
labrum, l. n., lip.
lāc, lactis, n., milk.
laccō, ēre, -vi, -itum, provoke, harass, attack, assail.
lap-is, -idis, m., stone.
lassitūdō, -dinis, f., fatigue, exhaustion.
lātē, adv., widely, far, far afield.
lateō, ēre, ul, lurk, lie concealed, be in ambush.
lātita-dō, -dinis, f., breadth, width.

- lat-us, -eris, n., side, flank.**
lātus, a, um, from fero.
lātus, a, um, broad, wide, extensive.
laudō, ēre, avi, atum, praise, commend; gerundive laudandus as adj., praiseworthy.
laxō, ēre, avi, atum, loosen, extend, open out.
lēgatiō, -ōnis, f., embassy.
lēgatus, l. m., ambassador, envoy; lieutenant (general), an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion, a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.
legiōnārius, a, um, of a legion, legionary.
lēnis, e, gentle, light.
lēniter, adv., gently, with little vigor.
lep-us, -oris, m., hare.
levis, e, light.
liber, era, erum, free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed.
liberaliter, adv., generously, graciously, kindly.
liberō, adv., freely, without check or restraint.
liberi, -orum, m. plur., children.
liberō, ēre, avi, atum, free, set free.
libertās, -tātis, f., liberty, freedom.
Liger, -eris, m., the river Loire, in the central part of Gaul.
lingua, ae, f., tongue, language.
lingula, ae, f., tongue of land, headland.
lis, litis, f., lawsuit; damages.
littera, ae, f., letter, character; in plur., letter, despatches.
lit-us, -oris, n., shore.
locus, l. m.; in plur., loca, -orum, n.; place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; in plur., ground, district, region, country, parts.
locutus, a, um, from loquer.
longē, adv., far; long.

longinquus, a, um, distant, remote.

longitudo, -dinis, f., length.

longurus, l, m., long pole.

longus, a, um, long; **navis longa**, war-ship, galley.

loqueri, l, locutus sum, speak.

Lælius, l, m., a Roman praenomen.

Legator-ix, -igis, m., a Briton of rank.

luna, ae, f., moon.

lux, lucis, f., light, dawn; **prima lux**, daybreak, dawn.

M

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus**.

machinatio, -onis, f., machine, engine.

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), more, rather.

magnitudo, -dinis, f., greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.

magnopere, adv. (**magis**, **māximē**), greatly, very, strongly, earnestly.

magnus, a, um (**mājor**, **māximus**), great, large; loud; serious, extensive: **māgnū**, as adv., highly, greatly.

mājor, comparative of **magnus**: in m. plur. as subst., elders, ancestors, fathers.

malacia, ae, f., calm, lull.

maleficium, l, n., mischief, outrage, harm, molesting.

māle, **mālle**, **māluī**, prefer.

mālus, l, m., mast.

mandatum, l, n., order, command, mandate; message.

mandā, āre, āvi, ātum, order, instruct; entrust, give up, commit, betake.

Manubracius, l, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.

māne, adv., in the morning.

manē, ēre, mānē, mānere, stay, remain, abide.

manipulus, l, m., manipule, company (one-third of a cohort).

manus, ae, f., hand; band, force; **manū**, by force.

mare, maris, n., sea.

maritimus, a, um, on or of the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval.

materia, ae, f., timber, wood, material.

mātārē, adv. (**mātāria**, **mātārimē**), early, soon.

mātārē, āre, āvi, ātum, hasten, make haste.

mātārus, a, um, early.

māximē, superlative adv. (see **magnopere**), very greatly, very much, chiefly, more especially.

māximus, a, um, superlative of **magnus**.

mediocritas, e, moderate.

mediterraneus, a, um, inland, central, interior.

medius, a, um, middle, central; intermediate; generally rendered by middle or half-way.

membrum, l, n., limb.

memoria, ae, f., memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition.

Menapii, ōrum, m. plur., the Menapii, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

mēnsūra, ae, f., measure.

mercator, -tōris, m., trader, merchant.

meridiānus, a, um, of midday, of noon.

meridies, ēi, m., midday, noon; the south.

meritum, l, n., service, merit, desert.

metis, ēre, metui, metum, reap, cut grain.

metus, ae, m., fear.

meus, a, um, my, mine.

mili-ca, -itis, m., soldier, man; as collective, the soldiers, soldiery.

militāris, e, military, of war.

mille, indeclinable adj.; in plur., **milia**, ōrum, n.; thousand.

minimē, adv., superlative of **parum**, by no means, least.

minor, comparative of **parvus**.
min-us, ere, -ui, -itum, *lessen, diminish*.
minus, adv., comparative of **parum**, *less; not very, not so well; not*.
mittē, ere, misi, missum, *send, despatch; hurl, throw*.
mōbilis, e, *fickle, changeable*.
mōbilitās, -tātis, f., *quickness, activity; unstable character*.
mōbilit̃er, adv., *easily*.
moderor, Ari, ātus sum, *manage, check, control*.
modo, adv., *only, merely*.
modus, l, m., *manner, kind, sort, fashion, style, character*.
moenia, lum, n. plur., *walls, fortifications*.
molestē, adv., *grievously; moleste ferre, to be annoyed, be vexed, be irritated*.
mollis, e, *soft; smooth, level*.
Mona, ae, f., *an island in the Irish channel*.
monē, ēre, ui, itum, *warn, advise, remind, urge*.
mōns, montis, m., *mountain; mountain range*.
mora, ae, f., *delay*.
Morini, ōrum, m. plur., *the Morini, a tribe in the north of Gaul*.
moror, Ari, ātus sum, *delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard*.
mors, mortis, f., *death*.
mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom, way; in plur., habits, character*.
Mosa, ae, m., *the Meuse, a river in north-eastern Gaul*.
mōtus, ōs, m., *movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt*.
movē, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move, shift*.
mox, adv., *soon*.
mulier, eris, f., *woman*.
multitudo, -dinis, f., *great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people*.

multum, adv. (**plūs, plurimum**), *much, often, very*.
multus, a, um (**plūs, plurimus**), *much; in plur., many; multo as adv., much, far*.
mūnī, ēre, iui, itum, *fortify, entrench, protect, defend, secure*.
mūnitio, -ōnis, f., *fortification, entrenchment; fortifying, construction; fortified works, defenses*.
mūrus, l, m., *wall*.

N

nactus, a, um, from **nascor**.
nam, conj., *for, now*.
namque, conj., *for*.
nascor, I, natus sum, *or-nactus sum, find, get, come upon, obtain, secure*.
nāscor, I, natus sum, *be born; arise; of metals, be found*.
nātis, -ōnis, f., *race, people, tribe, nation*.
nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character, formation*.
natus, a, um, from **nascor**.
natus, ōs, m., *birth*.
nauta, ae, m., *sailor*.
nauticus, a, um, *naval, nautical*.
nāvālis, e, *naval, of ships*.
nāvicula, ae, f., *small boat, skiff*.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage*.
nāvigium, l, n., *ship, vessel*.
nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātum, *sail*.
nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel; navis longa, warship; navis oneraria, transport*.
nē, conj., *that not, lest; w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., not to; w. verbs of fearing, that, lest*.
nē, adv., *not; ne...quidem, not even*.
-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, *in indirect questions, whether*.
nec, see **neque**.

necessarius, a, um, necessary, indispensable; **necessarius**, abl. as adv., of necessity, unavoidably, perforce.

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable.

necō, āre, āvi, ātum, kill, put to death, murder.

neg legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, neglect, slight, disregard.

negō, āre, āvi, ātum, deny, say .. not; refuse.

negōtium, i, n., business, enterprise, work; task, trouble, difficulty.

nēmō (nēmīnis), m., gen. and abl. not in use, no one, nobody.

nēquāquam, adv., by no means.

neque, or sometimes **nee** before consonants, adv. and conj., and not, nor; when repeated, neither .. nor.

Nervii, ōrum, m. plur., the Nervii, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

neq, see **neve**.

neuter, tra, trum, neither; in plur., neither side.

nēve or **neve**, or **not**, and that not, and not to, nor.

nihil, n. indecl. nothing; acc. as adv., not at all.

nihilum, i, n., nothing; **nihilō**, abl. as adv., none, no, w. comparatives.

nisi, conj., if not, unless, except.

nōbilitas, e, noble, of high birth, as subst., a man of rank; well-known, famous.

nōbilitās, -tātis, f., high birth, rank; the nobility, the nobles.

necesse, ēre, ul. itum, harm, injury, do harm to, molest, w. dat.

noctē, abl. as adv., by night.

nōlē, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, be reluctant, not wish, not want.

nōmen, -minis, n., name.

nōminātum, adv., by name.

nōminō, āre, āvi, ātum, name, call, mention.

nōn, adv., not, no.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnnullus, a, um, some.

nōnus, a, um, ninth.

nōa, plur. of ego.

nōcē, ere, nōvi, nōtum, learn; in perf., know; part. **nōtus, a, um**, known, well-known, familiar.

noster, tra, trum, our; m. plur. as subst., our men, troops or forces.

novem, nine.

Noviodunum, i, n., a town of the Sueviones.

novitas, -tātis, f., novelty, strangeness.

novus, a, um, new, fresh, novel, strange; in superlative, *intest, last, rear*; **novae res**, political change, change of government, revolution.

nox, noctis, f., night.

nudō, āre, āvi, ātum, lay bare, leave defenceless.

nullus, a, um, no, none; in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of **nemo**, no one.

numerus, i, m., number; amount.

Numida, ae, m., Numidian, from the north coast of Africa.

nummus, i, m., coin, money.

numquam, adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum, announce, report, bring word, tell.

nūntius, i, m., messenger, news, report, message, tidings.

nūper, adv., lately, recently.

nūtus, ōs, m., nod, signal.

O

ob, prop. w. acc., on account of, because of, for.

ob-jiēō, ere, -jēxi, -jēctum, place in the way, oppose; pass., lie opposite.

ob-sec, -sidia, m., hostage.

obstidō, -sidia, f., siege, blockade; pressure.

obstinatē, adv., steadily, firmly, persistently.

obtemperō, *Are, Avi, Atum, submit to, obey, w. dat.*
 ob-tineō, *Are, -tinui, -tentum, hold, possess, occupy, maintain.*
 occāsus, *As, m., setting; solis occasus, sunset, the west.*
 oc-cidō, *ere, -cidi, -cāsum, fall; set.*
 oc-cidō, *ere, -cidi, -cium, slay, kill.*
 occultō, *Are, Avi, Atum, hide, conceal.*
 occultus, *a, um, concealed, secret; in occulto, in secret, in hiding.*
 occupātiō, *-ōnis, f., engagement, occupation.*
 occupō, *Are, Avi, Atum, seize, get possession of; occupy, engage.*
 oc-curro, *ere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum, fall in with, meet, come upon, find, w. dat.*
 Oceanus, *l. m., (often with mare), the Ocean.*
 octāvus, *a, um, eighth.*
 octingenti, *ae, a, eight hundred.*
 octo, *eight.*
 octōdecim, *eighteen.*
 octōgintā, *eighty.*
 oculus, *l. m., eye.*
 officium, *l. n., service, duty, allegiance; in officio, loyal.*
 omniū, *adv., altogether, in all; w. negatives, at all.*
 omnis, *e, all, every, whole.*
 onerārius, *a, um, for burdens; navis oneraria, a transport.*
 onerō, *Are, Avi, Atum, load.*
 on-us, *-eris, n., burden, weight, bulk; cargo, freight.*
 opera, *ae, f., work, exertion, trouble, pains; operam dare, take pains, see to it, do one's best.*
 opiniō, *-ōnis, f., opinion, impression, idea; expectation, belief.*
 oportet, *ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb, it behoves, it is necessary; render freely by ought.*
 oppidānus, *a, um, of a town; m. plur. as subst., townspeople.*
 oppidum, *l. n., town.*

opportunē, *opportunately, conveniently.*
 opportunitās, *-tātis, f., convenience, advantage.*
 opportunus, *a, um, opportune, advantageous, favorable.*
 op-primō, *ere, -pressi, -pressum, overwhelm, crush, surprise; burden, weigh down, encumber.*
 oppugnātiō, *-ōnis, f., assault, attack.*
 oppugnō, *Are, Avi, Atum, attack, assault, storm.*
 (ops), *opis, f., help, aid.*
 optimē, *adv., superlative of bene, well, excellently.*
 optimus, *a, um, superlative of bonus, best.*
 op-us, *-eris, n., work, fortification, fortifying, structure; trade, handicraft; opere w. munus, by art.*
 ōra, *ae, f., shore, coast.*
 ōrātiō, *-ōnis, f., speech, address, words.*
 ōrātor, *-tōris, m., ambassador.*
 orbis, *is, f., circle.*
 ōr-dō, *-dinis, m., rank, line; arrangement, order.*
 orior, *lri, ortus sum, rise, arise, spring, be born; part. oriens, -entis, as adj., rising; oriens sol, sunrise, the east.*
 ōrnō, *Are, Avi, Atum, equip, supply, furnish.*
 ōrō, *Are, Avi, Atum, pray, beg, entreat, beseech.*
 ortus, *a, um, from orior.*
 ostēdō, *ere, -di, -tum, show, point out, explain, declare; display.*

P

P., an abbreviation for *Publius*.
 pābulātor, *-tōris, m., forager.*
 pābulator, *Arī, Atus sum, forage.*
 pābulum, *l. n., fodder, forage.*
 pācō, *Are, Avi, Atum, tranquillize, subdue, reduce.*
 pāene, *adv., almost.*

pagus, *i*, *m.*, district, canton, clan.
palastris, *-adis*, *f.*, marsh, swamp.
pandō, *ere*, **pandī**, **pansum**,
 spread out, outstretch.
pār, *paris*, equal, like, the same; a
 match.
parēns, *-entis*, *m.* and *f.*, parent.
parēs, *ere*, *ul*, *itum*, obey, submit,
 be obedient, be submissive, *w.* *dat.*
parō, *Are*, *avi*, *atum*, prepare,
 equip, get ready, arrange; pro-
 cure, get, acquire; *w.* **bellum**,
 prepare for war; *part.* **parātus**,
a, *um*, as *adj.*, ready, prepared.
pars, *partis*, *f.*, part, portion,
 section; quarter, direction, side.
partim, *adv.*, partly.
parvulus, *a*, *um*, very small,
 slight, trifling.
passim, *adv.*, in all directions.
passus, *a*, *um*, from **pando** or
 from **patior**.
passus, *us*, *m.*, pace (five feet); one
 thousand paces made one mile.
pater, *-tris*, *m.*, father.
patior, *i*, **passus** *sum*, suffer,
 allow, permit; bear, endure,
 withstand, cope with.
patrius, *a*, *um*, of one's fathers,
 ancestral.
pauci, *ae*, *a* (sing. not in Caesar),
 few, but few.
paucitas, *-tatis*, *f.*, small number.
paulatim, *adv.*, gradually, by de-
 grees.
paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.
paulō, *adv.*, a little, slightly,
 somewhat.
paulum, *adv.*, a little, slightly.
pāx, **pācis**, *f.*, peace.
pec-us, *-oris*, *n.*, cattle; flesh, meat.
ped-es, *-itis*, *m.*, foot-soldier; in
plur., infantry.
pedester, *tris*, *tre*, on foot, on or
 by land; of infantry.
peditatus, *us*, *m.*, infantry.
Pedius, *i*, *m.*, Quintus Pedius, one
 of Caesar's lieutenants.
pellis, *is*, *f.*, skin, hide.

pellō, *ere*, **pellī**, **pulsūm**, drive,
 dislodge, repulse, defeat, put to
 flight, rout.
pendō, *ere*, **pendī**, **pensum**,
 weigh; pay.
per, *prop.* *w.* *acc.*, through; by
 means of, by; by way of, over,
 along; by reason of.
per-agē, *ere*, *-ēgi*, *-actum*, finish,
 bring to an end.
per-clipō, *ere*, *-ēpi*, *-ceptum*, get;
 hear, listen to.
percontatō, *-ōnis*, *f.*, inquiry.
per-currō, *ere*, *-curri* (*-e-curri*),
-cursum, run along.
per-ducō, *ere*, *-dūxi*, *-ductum*,
 carry or bring over, bring; win
 over.
per-eō, *-ire*, *vi* (*-ivi*), *-itum*,
 perish, be killed.
per-equitō, *Are*, *avi*, *atum*, ride
 through, ride or drive about.
perexiguus, *a*, *um*, very small.
per-ferō, *-ferre*, *-tuli*, *-lātum*,
 endure, submit to; *carr.*, report.
per-ficiō, *ere*, *-fēci*, *-fectum*, fin-
 ish, complete.
perfuga, *ae*, *m.*, deserter.
perfugium, *i*, *n.*, refuge, place of
 refuge.
periculōsus, *a*, *um*, dangerous.
periculum, *i*, *n.*, danger, risk,
 peril; test, trial, attempt.
periātus, *a*, *um*, from **perfero**.
per-manēō, *ere*, *-māni*, *-mā-*
num, continue, remain, abide,
 hold fast.
per-mittō, *ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*,
 give up, yield, entrust, leave; al-
 low, grant permission, permit.
per-movēō, *ere*, *-mōvi*, *-mōtum*,
 move, influence, induce; alarm.
perpauci, *ae*, *a*, (a) very few.
perpetuus, *a*, *um*, continuous,
 unbroken; in **perpetuum**, for
 ever.
per-rumpō, *ere*, *-rūpi*, *-rupum*,
 break through, force one's way.
per-sequor, *i*, *-secutus* *sum*, pur-
 sue, follow up; attack; *w.* **bellō**,
 make war on.

- per-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum.**
see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.
- per-suādē, ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum.**
persuade, induce, w. dat.
- per-terrē, ēre, ul, itum, terrify.**
frighten, alarm, dismay, unnerve; in pass., be panic-stricken.
- per-tinē, ēre, -tinui, -tentum.**
extend, stretch; tend; concern, relate, belong to.
- perturbātis, -ōnis, f., alarm, confusion, panic.**
- perturbō, āre, avi, ātum.** throw into confusion, discomert, disturb, alarm; in pass., be at a loss.
- per-venī, ire, -veni, -ventum.**
come, reach, arrive.
- pēs, pedis, m., foot; pedibus, on foot, by land; pedem referre, to fall back, retire, retreat.**
- pet-ō, ere, -vi, -itum, ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.**
- Pictōnes, um, m. plur., the Pictōnes, a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.**
- pilum, l, n., javelin, spear.**
- Pirastae, ārum, m. plur., the Pirastae, a tribe in Illyricum.**
- plānitēs, ēi, f., plain, level space.**
- plānus, a, um, level, flat, evenly shelving.**
- plēbs, or plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people, the masses.**
- plēnus, a, um, full.**
- plērique, plēraque, plēraque, the most, the majority, the greater number.**
- plērumque, adv., generally, usually, in most cases.**
- plumbum, l, n., lead; plumbum album, tin.**
- plūrimum, adv., most, very much.**
- plūrimus, a, um, superlative of multus, most, very many.**
- plūs, plūris, comparative of multus, more; in plur., several, many.**
- poena, ae, f., penalty, punishment.**
- polliceor, ēri, itus sum, promise, make a promise, undertake.**
- pond-us, -eris, n., weight.**
- pōnō, ere, posui, positum, place, set, station; pitch; lay down; w. castra, pitch; in pass., be situated, be dependent.**
- pōns, pontis, m., bridge.**
- poposci, from posco.**
- populer, āri, ātus sum, ravage, lay waste, devastate.**
- populus, l, m., people, nation.**
- porta, ae, f., gate.**
- portō, āre, avi, ātum, carry, bring, convey.**
- portus, ūs, m., harbor, port.**
- poscō, ere, poposci, ask for, demand.**
- positus, a, um, from pono.**
- possessio, -ōnis, f., possession, occupation.**
- pos-sidē, ēre, -sedi, -sessum, possess, hold.**
- possum, posse, potui, be able, can, be possible; be powerful or strong, have weight or influence.**
- post, 1. adv., afterwards, after; 2. prep. w. acc., after, behind.**
- postē, adv., afterwards.**
- posteaquam, conj., after, when.**
- posterus, a, um, next, following.**
- post-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, postpone, set aside, disregard.**
- postquam, conj., after, when.**
- post-ridis, adv., the next day, on the morrow.**
- postulō, āre, avi, ātum, ask, ask for, demand, require.**
- potēns, entis, partic. of possum as adj., powerful, influential.**
- potestas, -tatis, f., power, control; opportunity.**
- potior, iri, itus sum, gain possession of.**
- potui, from possum.**
- praeacutus, a, um, sharpened at the end, pointed.**
- prae-cedō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, surpass.**

prae-ceps, -cipitis, headlong; abrupt, steep.

prae-cipitō, āre, āvi, ātum, sling, hurl.

prae-clādō, ere, -clādī, -clāsum, close, barricade.

praeda, ae, f., plunder, booty.

prae-dicō, āre, āvi, ātum, announce, proclaim, assert.

praedor, āri, ātus sum, plunder, get plunder, pillage.

praefectus, I, m., officer, commander (especially of cavalry), prefect.

prae-ficō, ere, -ficō, -fectum, put or set over, place in command of, give charge of, w. acc. and dat.

prae-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, fix before, place at the edge.

prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, send in advance, send on before or ahead, send forward.

praeparō, āre, āvi, ātum, prepare or get ready beforehand.

prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, break off.

prae-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, prescribe, give directions.

praesens, -entis, partic. of praesum, present.

praesidium, I, n., guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.

prae-stō, āre, -stī, -stīam or -stītum, exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior;

prae-stāt, impersonal, it is better.

prae-esse, -sui, be over, be at the head, have command of; be in command of, superintend, w. dat.

prae-ter, prep. w. acc., beyond, past; except, besides.

praeterea, adv., besides, moreover.

preces, um, f., (sing. defective and not found in Caesar), prayers, entreaties.

premo, ere, pressi, pressum, press, press hard; harass, oppress.

(**prex**), **preca**, f., see **preces**.

pridie, adv., the day before, on the previous day.

primō, adv., at first.

primum, adv., first, in the first place; cum or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, a, um, superlative of prior, first, foremost, in the rank; in primis, especially, particularly.

primiceps, -cipis, m., leading man, leader, chief.

principatus, us, m., leadership, chief position, first place, lead, supremacy.

prior, ius, comparative, former, earlier.

pristinus, a, um, former, previous; of former days, old-time.

prius, comparative adv., earlier, sooner; priusquam, quam, before, w. negatives, until.

priusquam, conj., before.

privatim, adv., individually, as private individuals.

privatus, a, um, private.

pro, prep. w. abl., before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in accordance with; in proportion to; in view of.

pro-cedō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go forward, advance.

procul, adv., at a distance.

pro-cumbō, ere, -cubi, lie down, fall, sink down.

pro-currō, ere, -eucurri (-curri), -cursum, run or rush forward, rush out, charge.

pro-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, give forth; hand down; betray.

pro-ducō, ere, -duxi, -ductum, lead forth or out; prolong, protract.

proellor, āri, ātus sum, fight.

proellum, I, n., battle, engagement, fighting, fight.

profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure.

profectus, a, um, from proficiscor.

pro-ficiscor, I, -fectus sum, set out, depart, start, go, proceed.

pro-fugō, āre, āvi, ātum, rout, put to flight.

pro-fugîs, ere, -fûgi, -lûgitum, flee, escape, make one's escape.

prô-gredior, I, -gressus sum, go forward, advance, proceed, go.

prohibeûs, ere, ul, itum, restrain, keep, prevent, hinder, check; cut off; protect.

prô-jeciûs, ere, -jêci, -jectum, throw down or away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.

prô-mittûs, ere, -misi, -missum, let grow; part. promissus, a, um, as adj., long, flowing.

prô-moveûs, ere, -môvi, -môtum, move forward, advance.

prô-muntârium, I, n., headland, promontory.

prope, adv. (propius, proximûs), near; nearly, almost, about.

prô-pelliûs, ere, -pull, -pulsum, drive off, repel, dislodge.

propinquitâs, -tâtis, f., nearness.

propinquus, a, um, near, close; m. as subst., relative, kinsman.

propior, ius, comparative, nearer; see proximus.

propius, adv., see prope.

prô-pônûs, ere, posui, -positum, set forth, display.

propter, prep. w. acc., on account of, because of.

propterea, adv., on this account, for this reason; **propterea quod**, because.

prô-pugnûs, ere, avi, itum, fight in defence, rush out to fight.

prô-pulsiûs, ere, avi, itum, drive off, repel, keep at bay.

prô-sequor, I, -secutus sum, pursue, follow; dismiss, address.

prô-spectus, us, m., view, sight.

prô-spiciûs, ere, -spexi, -spectum, provide (for), make provision, take precautions, take care.

prôtinus, adv., at once, immediately.

prôturbûs, ere, avi, itum, drive off (in confusion), dislodge.

prô-vehûs, ere, -vexi, -vectum, carry forward.

prô-vidûs, ere, -vidi, -visum, provide (for), secure, procure, make provision.

prôvincia, ae, f., province; especially 'the province' of Gallia Transalpina.

prô-volûs, ere, avi, itum, rush forth, rush out, dart forth.

proximûs, adv., superlative of prope, last, most recently, lately.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next; last, recent; see propior.

publicus, a, um, public, official, of the state or people; res publica, see respublica.

Publius, I, m., Publius, a Roman praenomen.

puer, eri, m., boy, child.

pugna, ae, f., fight, fighting, battle.

pugnûs, ere, avi, itum, fight; in pass., pugnatur, impersonally, the battle goes on, freely (they) fight.

pulsus, a, um, from pello.

pulvis, -eris, m., dust, cloud of dust.

putûs, ere, avi, itum, think, beieve, hold, consider, suppose.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for Quintus.

quâ, adv., where, by which road.

quadrâgintâ, forty.

quadrîngenti, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerûs, ere, quæsi, quæsitum, ask, enquire.

quaestor, -ôrîs, m., quaestor, the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

quam, adv., how; w. comparatives, than; w. superlatives, as ... as possible.

quandûs, adv., at any time, ever.

quantus, a, um, how great, what (great), how much; as great as, as much as, as.

quârtus, a, um, fourth.

quattuor, four.

-que, enclitic conjunction, and.

querer, I, questus sum, complain.

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that*; *he who*; as coordinating relative, *this, he*; after *idem*, *as*.

qui, quae, quod, interrogative adj., *what, which*.

qui, quae, quod, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., *some, any*; *anyone*.

quicquam, from quisquam.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever, whichever*.

quidam, quoddam, quiddam or quoddam, *a certain (one)*.

quidem, adv., *certainly, indeed*, *no... quidem, not even*.

quin, conj., *but that, so that not*; often best rendered by *from*, *w. gerund in -ing*.

quindecim, *fifteen*.

quingen'i, *ac, a, five hundred*.

quingentia, *fifty*.

quinque, *five*.

quintus, *a, um, fifth*.

Quintus, I, m., *Quintus*, a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who; what*.

quis, quae, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything*.

quisquam, quidquam or quicquam, *any one, anything, any*.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *each, each one*.

quò, abl. of qui, as conj., *that, in order that*.

quò, abl. of qui, as adv., *by how much, w. comparatives, the; for quo minus see quominus*.

quo, relative adv., *whither, where, to, at or into which*.

quod, conj., *until*.

quod, conj., *because, that, in that; on the ground that; the fact that*.

quominus or quò minus, conj., *so that not; freely rendered by from*.

quoniam, conj., *since, as, whereas*.

queque, conj., *also, too, as well*.

quotannis, adv., *yearly, every year*.

R

rá-dò, ere, -al, -sum, *shave*.

rapiditas, -itatis, f., *swiftness*.

rârus, *a, um, scattered, few, in scattered or detached groups, in small bodies*.

râsus, *a, um, from rade*.

ratiò, -onis, f., *method, system, plan, way, arrangement, character*.

rebelliò, -onis, f., *renewal of war*.

recéns, -entis, *new, recent; fresh*.

receptus, -us, m., *retreat*.

recipiò, ere, -cêpi, -ceptum, *re-gain, recover, get back; receive, admit; se recipere, (1) recover oneself, rally, recover, (2) retreat, fall back, withdraw, betake oneself, return*.

recuperâ, âre, âvi, âtum, *regain, recover*.

rechûò, âre, âvi, âtum, *refuse, object, protest*.

redâ, *ac, f., wagon*.

redâctus, *a, um, from redigo*.

red-dò, ere, -didî, -ditum, *give back, return, restore*.

red-eò, ire, -it, (-ivi), -itum, *go back, come back, return*.

red-igò, ere, -igî, -actum, *reduce, bring*.

redintegrò, âre, âvi, âtum, *re-new, restore, revive*.

reditus, -us, m., *return, returning*.

re-dûcò, ere, -dûxi, -ductum, *lead back, bring back, withdraw*.

referò, referre, rettuli (or retuli), relatum, *carry back; report, announce; pedem referre, retreat, fall back*.

re-âctò, ere, -âcti, -fectum, *repair, rest*.

regiò, -onis, f., *region, district, part, country*.

rêgnum, I, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom*.

re-âctò, ere, -âcti, -fectum, *throw or hurl back, drive back; throw aside, drop*.

relictus, *a, um, from relinquo*.

religiō, -ōnis, f., religious obligation or belief or scruple.

re-linquō, ere, -liqui, -lictum, leave, leave behind; abandon, give up; in pass., remain.

reliquus, a, um, remaining, other, left, further; generally to be rendered by the rest of.

re-maneō, ēre, -mansī, -mansum, remain, remain behind, stay.

rēm-ex, -igis, m., rower, oarsman.

Rēmi, ōrum, m. plur., the Remi, a tribe in northern Gaul.

rēmigō, āre, -avi, -atum, row.

re-migrō, āre, -avi, -atum, move back, go back, return, retire.

re-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, send back; relax; part. **remissus, a, um,** as adj., mild, not severe.

re-movēō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, remove, send away; withdraw, draw away.

Rēmus, i, m., a Reman, one of the Remi, a tribe in northern Gaul.

rēmus, i, m., oar.

re-mōntō, āre, -avi, -atum, report, bring (back) word.

re-pellō, ere, reppuli, -pulsum, drive back, beat off, repulse, defeat.

repente, adv., suddenly.

repentinus, a, um, sudden, hasty.

re-periō, ere, repperi, -pertum, find, find out, discover.

reportō, āre, -avi, -atum, carry back, take back.

repulsus, a, um, from *repello*.

rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, action; the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering.

re-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum, break down, destroy.

re-sistō, ere, -stīti, resist, withstand, oppose, hold one's ground, make or offer resistance, w. dat.

re-spondēō, ēre, -spondi, -spōsum, answer, make answer, reply.

rēpublica, rēpublicae, f., the state, the country, the commonwealth, public affairs or interests; often written as two words.

restitī from *resisto*.

restit-uō, ere, -ui, -atum, restore, rebuild, renew.

re-tinēō, ēre, -tīni, -tentum, detain, hold; keep, maintain.

re-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -tractum, bring back (by force).

rever-tō, ere, -ti, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), **rever-tor, i, -sus sum** (chiefly in pres. tenses), return, come back.

re-vo-cō, āre, -avi, -atum, recall, call back.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

Rhēnus, i, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, i, m., the Rhone.

ripa, ae, f., bank.

rogō, āre, -avi, -atum, ask, invite, ask for, request.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; m. as subst., a Roman.

rota, ae, f., wheel.

Rūfus, i, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rāmor, -ōris, n., rumor, report.

rārsus, adv., again, back again.

S

Sabinus, i, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, is, m., the Sabis, now Sambre, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

saepe, adv. (saepius, saepissime), often, repeatedly.

sagitta, ae, f., arrow.

sagittārius, i, m., archer.

sal-us, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare; place of safety.

Santonī, ōrum, m. plur., the Santoni, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

**sanus, a, um, sound, sane; pro
sano, like a discreet man, sensi-
bly, prudently.**

**sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in
plur., pack, kit-bag, (personal)
baggage.**

**satis, adv., enough, sufficiently;
tolerably, quite, considerably;
often as subst., enough, sufficient.**

**satis-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, do
enough, do one's duty; make
amends or reparation, satisfy,
apologise.**

saxum, i, n., stone, rock.

scapha, ae, f., skiff, small boat.

scientia, ae, f., knowledge.

sciō, ire, ivi, itum, know.

**scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum,
write.**

scutum, i, n., shield.

secus, see secus.

secundum, prep. w. acc., along.

**secundus, a, um, second; favor-
able, successful.**

**seus, adv. (comp. *secius*), other-
wise; *nihilosecius*, nonetheless.**

sequor, a, um, from sequor.

sed, conj., but.

**sedes, is, f., seat; abode, settle-
ment.**

**Segontiaci, ōrum, m. plur., the
Segontiaci, a tribe in Britain.**

**Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling
in Kent.**

semita, ae, f., path, by-path.

senatus, ūs, m., senate.

sententia, ae, f., opinion, view.

**sentiō, ire, sensi, sensum, feel,
perceive.**

septem, seven.

**septentriō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in
plur.), the seven stars of the con-
stellation of the Great Bear;
hence the north.**

septimus, a, um, seventh.

septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.

septuagintā, seventy.

**Séquani, ōrum, m. plur., the
Sequani, a tribe in central Gaul.**

**sequor, i, secutus sum, follow,
pursue; attach oneself to.**

serō, ere, sēvi, satum, sow.

**servitū, -tutis, f., slavery, bond-
age, subjection.**

**servō, Āre, ūvi, Atum, keep, hold,
maintain; watch.**

sescenti, ae, a, six hundred.

seuē, for se, from sui.

**sevocō, Āre, ūvi, Atum, call aside,
take aside.**

sex, six.

sexagintā, sixty.

**si, conj., if, even if; in case, to
see whether.**

**sic, adv., thus, in this way; so, in
such a way; as follows.**

**stectis, -tutis, f., drying up, dry-
ness, drought.**

signifer, eri, m., standard-bearer.

**significō, Āre, ūvi, Atum, indi-
cate, intimate.**

**signum, i, n., signal, standard;
signa ferre or inferre, to ad-
vance.**

**Silius, i, m., Titus Silius, one of
Caesar's officers.**

silva, ae, f., wood, forest.

silvestris, e, wooded.

**simul, adv., at the same time;
simul atque (or sometimes
simul alone), as soon as.**

simulō, Āre, ūvi, Atum, pretend.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

**singillatim, adv., singly, individ-
ually, one by one.**

**singularis, e, single, one by one;
extraordinary, remarkable.**

**singuli, ae, a, one each, one at a
time, one by one, singly, several,
one.**

**sinister, tra, trum, left; fem.
sinistra as subst., left hand (sc.
manus).**

siquidem, conj., since.

situs, ūs, m., position, situation.

socius, i, m., ally.

**sōl, sōlis, m., sun; oriens sol, the
east; occidens sol, the west.**

solita-dē, -dinis, f., solitude.

solicitō, Arc, Avi, Atum, stir up, incite, urge, importune, tamper with, try to win over.

solum, adv., only.

solus, a, um, alone, only.

solvō, ere, solvi, solūtum, loose; with or without maves, weigh anchor, set sail.

spatium, l, n., space, extent; distance, interval; pause, time.

speciēs, Pl, f., appearance, form, sight.

spectō, Arc, Avi, Atum, look, face, slope, lie.

speculātor, -tōris, m., spy.

speculātorius, a, um, for spying, reconnoitring, scouting.

sperō, ei, f., hope.

spoliō, Arc, Avi, Atum, strip, rob, despoil.

stabilitās, -tātis, f., steadiness.

statim, adv., at once.

statīō, -ōnis, f., guard, sentry, outpost, picket.

stat-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, decide, determine, resolve.

strepitus, ōs, m., noise, din, clatter, confusion.

studeō, ēre, ui, strive, be eager for, be bent upon, aim at.

studium, l, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm.

sub, prep. (1) w. abl., under, beneath; at the foot of, close by, near to; (2) w. acc., under, close up to; of time, towards, just before.

sub-ducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, draw off, withdraw; draw up, haul up, beach.

subductiō, -ōnis, f., hauling on shore, beaching.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

subitus, a, um, sudden, hasty.

sub-jiēō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, bring under, subject, expose; in pass., lie near.

sublātus, a, um, from tollō.

subministrō, Arc, Avi, Atum, supply, furnish.

sub-mittō, ere, misi, -missum, send (to aid), send to one's aid.

sub-movēō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, remove, drive off, dislodge.

sub-sequor, l, -secutus sum, follow (closely), follow up, pursue.

subsidiū, l, n., aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement.

sub-sistō, ere, -steti, halt; hold.

sub-sum, -esse, -fui, be near, be close at hand.

sue-cidō, ere, -ceci, -cessum, succeed, take the place of, relieve, w. dat.; come close to; come up.

successus, ōs, m., approach, advance.

sue-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut down.

sudis, is, f., stake.

Suebi, ōrum, m. plur., the Suebi, a German tribe on the Rhine.

Suessionēs, ōrum, m. plur., the Suessiones, a tribe in northern Gaul.

sui, sibi, sē or sēē, reflex. pron., himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them; inter se (to, with, from, etc.), one another.

sum, esse, fui, be, exist; w. gen., long to.

summa, ae, f., total sum; chief control, command, management.

summus, a, um, superlative of superus, highest, topmost, greatest, chief, utmost, supreme, extreme.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, take, undertake; spend, expend.

superior, ius, comparative of superus, higher, upper; former, previous, preceding; superior, more successful.

superō, Arc, Avi, Atum, conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious; be superior, surpass.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, remain, survive.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., thanksgiving.

suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., above, before.

suspicio, -ōnis, f., suspicion.

suspitor, -ari, ātus sum, suspect.

sustentō, -āre, -avi, -atum, hold out, maintain oneself.

sustinentō, -ēre, -timui, -tentum, sustain, withstand, hold out, hold one's own, bear, endure; check, rein in, keep in hand.

sustuli, from tolle.

suus, a, um, his, her, its, their; his own, etc.; m. plur. as subst., sui, -orum, his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen; n. plur. as subst., sua, -orum, his (their) possessions, property.

T

T., an abbreviation for Titus.

talea, ae, f., bar, rod.

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., still, however, yet.

Tamensis, is, m., the Thames.

tandem, adv., at length, at last.

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactum, touch, border on.

tantulus, a, um, so trifling, so small.

tantus, a, um, so great, so much, such; so powerful; as great, as much; n. tantum, as adv., so much, so far.

tardō, -ere, slowly.

tardō, -āre, -avi, -atum, check.

Taxi, -gulus, l. m., a king ruling in Kent.

tegimentum, l. n., covering.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum, cover, hide, protect.

tēlūm, l. n., w. upon, missile, dart.

temerō, -ere, rashly, thoughtlessly, without good reason.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of chariot).

temperō, -āre, -avi, -atum, control, restrain; part. as adj., temperatus, a, um, temperate, mild.

tempesta, -tatis, f., weather; storm.

tempus, -oris, n., time, season, occasion.

Temeteri, -orum, m. plur., the Tencteri, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

tendō, -ere, tetendi, tēsum or tentum, stretch, stretch out.

teneō, -ere, ui, tentum, hold, keep, restrain, detain.

tergum, l. n., back, rear; tergum vertere, to flee, take to flight; post tergum, in the rear, behind.

terni, ae, a, l., three at a time, three.

terra, ae, f., earth, land; country.

Terrasidius, l. m., Titus Terrasidius, an officer with Caesar.

terrītō, -āre, frighten, terrify.

terror, -oris, m., alarm, panic, fright, terror.

tertius, a, um, third.

testā-dō, -dinis, f., tortoise-shell; testudo, shelter of overlapping shields.

timeō, -ere, ui, fear, feel or have fear, be anxious, be afraid.

timor, -oris, m., fear, alarm, fright, dread, panic.

Titūrius, l. m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, l. m., Titus, a Roman praenomen.

tolle, -ere, sustuli, sublātum, raise; take aboard; w. ancoram, weigh; take away, remove, destroy.

tormentum, l. n., engine (for throwing missiles), artillery.

tot, indeclinable, so many.

totidem, indeclinable, as many, the same number.

tōtus, a, um, whole, entire, all; often rendered freely by entirely, altogether.

trabs, trabis, f., beam.

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, hand over, give up, surrender, deliver.

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across, bring over, lead.

trāiectus, -us, m., crossing, passage.

tranquillitas, -tatis, f., stillness, calm.
trans, prep. w. acc., across, over, beyond, on the other side of.
trans-acendō, ere, -acendī, -acensum, cross over, board.
trans-eō, -ire, -ī (-ivī), -itum, cross, cross over, come over.
trans-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, cross.
transmissus, ōs, m., passage across.
transportō, āre, avi, atum, carry, lead, bring or take over.
Transrhodanus, a, um, living across the Rhine (from Gaul).
Trebius, ī, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus, one of Caesar's officers.
trecenti, ae, a, three hundred.
trēs, tria, three.
Trēveri, ōrum, m. plur., the Treveri, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.
tribūnus, ī, m., tribune (an officer in the Roman army).
trib-uō, ere, -uī, atum, grant, give, bestow, render.
triduum, ī, n., space of three days, three days.
triennum, ī, n., three years.
trigintā, thirty.
Trinobantes, um, the Trinobantes, a tribe in Britain.
tripertitū, adv., in three divisions.
triplex, -leis, triple, threefold.
triangulus, a, um, triangular.
tuba, ae, f., trumpet.
tueor, ēri, tātus (or tutus) sum, protect, guard, defend.
tum, adv., then, at that time, thereupon; **cum . . . tum,** both . . . and, not only . . . but also.
tumultus, ōs, m., noise, uproar, commotion, disorder.
tumulus, ī, m., mound.
turnus, ae, f., squadron, troop.
turris, is, f., tower.

U

ubi, adv., where; when.
Ubiī, ōrum, m. plur., the Ubiī, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.
ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, punish.
ullus, a, um, any; as subst., any one.
ulterior, ius, comparative, further, more remote.
ultrā, prep. w. acc., beyond.
ultro, adv., of one's own accord, spontaneously.
unquam, adv., ever.
und, adv., at the same time, together, along.
unde, adv., whence, from which.
undecimus, a, um, eleventh.
undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides.
universus, a, um, all, in a body; as subst., all together, the whole body.
unus, a, um, one, a single; alone, only; one and the same.
urbs, urbis, f., city.
urgē, ēre, urxi, press hard.
Usipetes, um, m. plur., the Usipetes, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.
usque, adv., all the way, right or quite up to.
ut, a, um, from uter.
usus, ōs, m., experience, use, practice; management, handling; advantage, service; **ex usu, of advantage, advantageous.**
ut, or uti, as; that, in order that, in purpose clauses generally best rendered by infin. w. to; w. verbs of fearing, **that not; seeing that.**
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both; m. plur., both sides.
ut, see ut.
uter, ī, utus sum, use, employ, make use of, adopt, avail oneself of, show, display, w. abl.
uxor, -oris, f., wife.

V

vacuus, a. um, *empty*.
vadum, l. n., *ford; shoal, shallow*.
vager, *Art. Atus sum, wander, roam about*.
vales, *Are, ul, be strong, be powerful, have weight or influence*.
vallum, l. n., *rampart, wall*.
vastis, *Are, Avl, Atum, lay waste, ravage, devastate*.
vastus, a. um, *vast, boundless, immense*.
vectig-al, -*Atis*, n., *tax, tribute*.
vectorius, a. um, *for carrying; vectorium navigium, a transport*.
vehementer, adv., *strongly, vigorously, exceedingly*.
Velantius, l. m., *Quintus Velantius, one of Caesar's officers*.
Vellocaesae, um, m. plur., *the Vellocaesae, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine*.
Veneti, *Arum*, m. plur., *the Veneti, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul*.
Venetiana, a. um, *of or with the Veneti*.
venis, *Ire, vñl, ventum, come*.
venitis, *Are, Avl, Atum, come often, keep coming*.
ventus, l. m., *wind, breeze*.
vereor, *Art, itus sum, fear, be afraid, feel anxiety*.
vergè, *ere, incline, trend, lie, face*.
verè, *indeed, in fact; but; often untranslated*.
ver-tè, -*ere, -it, -sum, turn; terga vertere, to flee, take to flight*.
vestis, *Ire, lvi, itum, clothe*.
vet-è, *Are, -ul, -itum, forbid, order not*.
vet-us, -*eris*, *old*.
vestigium, l. n., *flag*.

via, *ae, l., way, road, track, route, journey*.
vici, *from vico*.
vices, adv., *twenty times*.
vicus, l. m., *village*.
vide, *Are, videl, viderum, see; in pass., be seen, seem, appear, seem good or seem best*.
vigilia, *ae, l., watch (one-fourth of the night time)*.
viginti, *twenty*.
vincè, *ere, vici, victum, conquer, defeat, overcome*.
vinculum, l. n., *chain; often in plur., prison*.
vinca, *ae, l., vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea*.
virga, *lum, from via*.
vir-gè, -*ginis*, l., *maiden*.
Viromandui, *Arum*, m. plur., *the Viromandui, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul*.
virtus, -*tutis*, l., *manliness, valor, bravery, courage, energy*.
vis, *vim, vl, plur. viris, lum., l., force, strength, power; fury, violence; vigor; plur., strength, powers*.
vius, a. um, *from vides*.
vitè, *Are, Avl, Atum, avoid, seek to escape*.
vitrum, l. n., *wood*.
vivè, *ere, vixi, victum, live; w. abl., live on*.
vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly*.
voce, *Are, Avl, Atum, call, summon, invite*.
volè, *velle, volui, wish, be willing, want*.
voluntas, -*tatis*, l., *wish, desire; good will*.
voluptas, -*tatis*, l., *pleasure*.
Volusenus, l. m., *Caius Volusenus, a military tribune with Caesar*.
vox, *vocis*, l., *voice, utterance, cry*.
vulnerè, *Are, Avl, Atum, wound*.
vuln-us, -*eris*, n., *wound*.



Attack on a Walled City.

TEST PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION AT SIGHT.

1. Eodem die, ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse ascensum. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit equitumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

iugum—ridge.

habeo—consider.

2. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agendici, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulercio, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

supplementum—reinforcements.

nuper—recently.

Agendicum, Lutetia—names of towns.

Parinii—name of a people.

3. Germani, desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constituisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit

etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Caius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sed dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemabat, oppugnare parabant. Positis castris a millibus passuum quindecim, auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt.

fidem non faceret, could not gain credence, i. e., could not cause them to believe.

4. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis, dejecti sunt loco: sed intolerantius Gallon insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus decimae tertiae legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae, ex castris minoribus eductae, cum Tito Sextio legato locum ceperant superiorem. Quibus rebus confectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Gallorum atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est; quod eo oppido recepto, civitatem Bavorum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

intoleranter—eagerly.
tardo—check.

excipio—support.
redigo—bring.

5. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublatis Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere.

sublatus—elated.

in praesentia—for the time being.

6. Prima luce, nostris omnibus transportatis, hostes qui in munitionibus erant, magno cum clamore aciem instruunt. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, dat signum proelii; primo concursu ab dextro, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam conjiciuntur: ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium concidissent, tamen reliqui acriter resistebant nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. At, incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt, impetumque de improvviso fecerunt; ita hostes circumventi omnes interfectique sunt.

priſtinus—old-time.

suspicionem do—show signs.

concido—fall.

exitus—issue.

7. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduorum, ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat: huc magnum numerum equorum, huius belli causa in Hispania coemptum, miserat. Sed Galli cum intellexissent Caesarem abesse, exercitum ad oppidum expugnandum miserunt. Itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; oppidum, quod ab se teneri non posse iudicabant, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt; frumentum flumine atque incendio corruperunt; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidiaque ad ripas Ligeris disponere coeperunt, ut ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere possent.

pecunia—money.

custos—a guard.

coemo—buy up.

partior—divide.

corrumpo—destroy.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli, cohortati inter se ne speratam praedam ex manibus

dimitterent, flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Haec fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes trans flumen eliceret, placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in colle quodam collocatis, "Habetis," inquit, "milites, quam petistis facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepe imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec videre existimate." Simul signa ad hostem verti iubet, et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera disponit.

elicio—entice.

praesto—display.

petistis = *petivistis*.

turma—squadron.

9. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias suas, quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis duabus legionibus praesidio relictis secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites, Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

protinus—at once.

situs—situation.

10. Nuntiatur Afranio magnas hostium copias ad flumen conatitisse. Ad hoc opprimendos cum omni equitatu tribusque legionibus noctu profiscitur, imprudentesque praemissis equitibus adoritur. Celeriter sese tamen Gallorum equites expediunt, proelioque commisso magnum numerum nostrorum diu sustinuerunt. Sed ubi signa legionum appropinquare coeperunt, armis abiectis se fugae mandant. Reliqui, hac pugna nacti spatium, se in loca superiora recipiunt. Sed, nulla ad explorandum idoneum locum castris data facultate, necessario

procul ab aqua et natura iniquo loco castra ponunt. Qua re animadversa, Afranius proelio non lacescit, et eo die castra munire suos non passus est, quo paratiores essent ad insequendum omnes, si hostes longius progredierentur.

expedio—make ready. *iniquus*—unfavorable.
spatium, that is, *spatium temporis* not *spatium loci*.

(Caesar is besieging a town which Vercingetorix has set out to relieve.)

11. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis qui arma iumentaue conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato, arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destitutis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

conquiro—search for. *claudio*—close.
destringo—draw.

12. Hoc ipso tempore Germani in castra irrumpere conantur. Imprudentes nostri re nova perturbantur ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Totis trepidantur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit: neque quo signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat provident. Alius iam castra capta esse nuntiat, alius deleta exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse exclamat. Tali timore omnibus perterritis confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivis audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere conantur neque ipsi adhortantur ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

trepidatur, impersonal passive. *deleo*—destroy.

13. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, Pullo et Voreus, qui de locis summis semper contendebant. Ex his Pullo, cum acerrime pugnaretur, "Quid dubitas," inquit, "Vorene? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit." Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones. Neque Voreus sese vallo continet sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. In Pullonea, hostes universi tela coniciunt, neque dant regrediendi facultatem, impeditumque circumstant. Illi Voreus laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pullone omnis multitudo convertit; illum arbitrantur occisum. Voreus, dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert auxilium Pullo, atque ambo incolumes sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic alter alteri auxilio salutisque erat neque diiudicari poterat, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

existimatio—opinion.

diudico—decide.

14. Interim Calenus, cui Caesar negotium dederat reliquas legiones transportandi, militibus in naves impositis, naves solvit paulumque a portu progressus litteras a Caesare accipit, quibus est certior factus portus litoraue omnia classibus Pompeii teneri. Quo cognito se in portum recipit navesque omnes redire jubet. Una ex his, quae imperio Caleni non paruit, quod erat sine militibus, a Bibulo expugnata est, qui de servis liberisque omnibus supplicium sumit et ad unum interficit. Tum Bibulus rediit cum classe ad Oricum, sed milites e classe exponere prohibebatur; praesidiis enim dispositis omnia litora a Caesare tenebantur. Interim Caesar frustra suos, qui in Italia cum Antonio tenebantur, exspectabat. Ad quos arcessendos tandem, cum moras diutius pati non posset, dicitur inter maximam tempestatem furoromque maris navem parvam conscendisse solus.

supplicium sumo de—punish.

mora—delay.

15. Quibus rebus cognitis, magnum numerum militum in naves imponit et media nocte cohortes sexaginta ad eam partem munitionum ducit, quae pertinebant ad mare longissimeque a

maximis castris Caesaris aberant. Eo statim naves militibus completas mittit; et quid a quoque fieri velit, praecipit. Ad eas munitiones Caesar Marcellinum quaestorem cum legione nona positum habebat. Quarum munitionum haec fuit ratio. Timens Caesar ne nostri circumvenirentur, duplex eo loco fecerat vallum, ut, si ancipiti proelio pugnaretur, posset resisti. Sed operum magnitudo spatium perficiendi non dabat. Itaque contra mare tertium vallum, quod has duas munitiones conjungeret, nondum perfecerat. Quae res per Allobroges Pompeio cognita erat. Ad hunc locum subito prima luce Pompeii milites sunt congressi; simul navibus vecti milites in vallum tela jaciebant, fossasque complebant.

ancipiti—on two sides.

veho—convey.

16. Itaque consilio convocato, cohortatus est ut ea quae imperasset diligenter industrieque administrarent; et prima confecta vigilia quattuor milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi jubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque ejusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci jubet. Ipse post paulo egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit quo naves appelli jusserat. Eo cum ventum esset, exploratores hostium, qui omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes (quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas) ab nostris opprimuntur. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati et hostium acies cernebatur.

inopinans—not expecting.

cerno—see.

17. Mittit primo Brutum adolescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium legatum; postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus, eo quo Labienum miserat contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo praesidio deducit, equitum partem se sequi, partem circumire exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una quadraginta cohortibus,

quas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiores quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proelio intersit.

offero—throw in one's way. *interea*—take part in.

18. Pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspiciti ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit statim hac re audita ex castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi totius diei labore iailites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt. Postero die Vercingetorix concilio convocato id bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, se illis offerre, si Romanis tradere velint. Mittuntur de deditione ad Caesarem legati. Iubet arma tradi, principes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris considit; eo duces producuntur; Vercingetorix deditur, arma proiciuntur.

caedes—slaughter.

defessus—weary.

deleo—destroy.

necessitas—need, interest.

19. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod Germani auxilia contra se Treveris miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa, neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant ut sibi pareat, atque si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur.

purgo—excuse.

laedo—violate.

parco—spare.

20. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime Germani agriculturæ student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum relictus sui barbaris tolleretur, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quæ ripas Ubiorum contingebat, rescindit atque in extremo ponte turrim constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Gaium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem praefecit. Ipso, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus est per Arduennam silvam, quæ est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet.

studeo—pay attention to.
contingo—touch, border on.
rescindo—destroy.

tollo—take away.
maturesco—ripen.
tueor—defend.



Warship.